

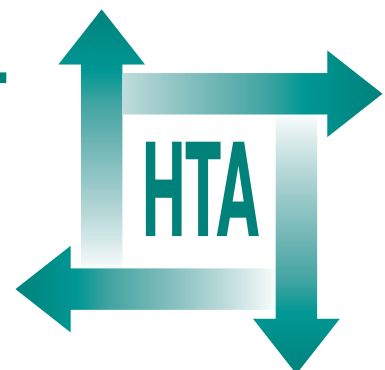
Provision, uptake and cost of cardiac rehabilitation programmes: improving services to under-represented groups

AD Beswick, K Rees, I Griebisch, FC Taylor,
M Burke, RR West, J Victory, J Brown,
RS Taylor and S Ebrahim



October 2004

**Health Technology Assessment
NHS R&D HTA Programme**





INAHTA

How to obtain copies of this and other HTA Programme reports.

An electronic version of this publication, in Adobe Acrobat format, is available for downloading free of charge for personal use from the HTA website (<http://www.hta.ac.uk>). A fully searchable CD-ROM is also available (see below).

Printed copies of HTA monographs cost £20 each (post and packing free in the UK) to both public **and** private sector purchasers from our Despatch Agents.

Non-UK purchasers will have to pay a small fee for post and packing. For European countries the cost is £2 per monograph and for the rest of the world £3 per monograph.

You can order HTA monographs from our Despatch Agents:

- fax (with **credit card** or **official purchase order**)
- post (with **credit card** or **official purchase order** or **cheque**)
- phone during office hours (**credit card** only).

Additionally the HTA website allows you **either** to pay securely by credit card **or** to print out your order and then post or fax it.

Contact details are as follows:

HTA Despatch
c/o Direct Mail Works Ltd
4 Oakwood Business Centre
Downley, HAVANT PO9 2NP, UK

Email: orders@hta.ac.uk
Tel: 02392 492 000
Fax: 02392 478 555
Fax from outside the UK: +44 2392 478 555

NHS libraries can subscribe free of charge. Public libraries can subscribe at a very reduced cost of £100 for each volume (normally comprising 30–40 titles). The commercial subscription rate is £300 per volume. Please see our website for details. Subscriptions can only be purchased for the current or forthcoming volume.

Payment methods

Paying by cheque

If you pay by cheque, the cheque must be in **pounds sterling**, made payable to *Direct Mail Works Ltd* and drawn on a bank with a UK address.

Paying by credit card

The following cards are accepted by phone, fax, post or via the website ordering pages: Delta, Eurocard, Mastercard, Solo, Switch and Visa. We advise against sending credit card details in a plain email.

Paying by official purchase order

You can post or fax these, but they must be from public bodies (i.e. NHS or universities) within the UK. We cannot at present accept purchase orders from commercial companies or from outside the UK.

How do I get a copy of HTA on CD?

Please use the form on the HTA website (www.hta.ac.uk/htacd.htm). Or contact Direct Mail Works (see contact details above) by email, post, fax or phone. *HTA on CD* is currently free of charge worldwide.

The website also provides information about the HTA Programme and lists the membership of the various committees.

Provision, uptake and cost of cardiac rehabilitation programmes: improving services to under-represented groups

AD Beswick,¹ K Rees,¹ I Griebisch,² FC Taylor,³
M Burke,¹ RR West,⁴ J Victory,⁵ J Brown,²
RS Taylor⁶ and S Ebrahim^{1*}

¹ Department of Social Medicine, University of Bristol, UK

² MRC Health Services Research Collaboration, Department of Social Medicine, University of Bristol, UK

³ Bristol Heart Institute, University of Bristol, UK

⁴ Wales Heart Research Institute, University of Wales College of Medicine, Cardiff, UK

⁵ United Bristol Healthcare NHS Trust, UK

⁶ Department of Public Health and Epidemiology, University of Birmingham, UK

* Corresponding author

Declared competing interests of authors: none

Published October 2004

This report should be referenced as follows:

Beswick AD, Rees K, Griebisch I, Taylor FC, Burke M, West RR, *et al.* Provision, uptake and cost of cardiac rehabilitation programmes: improving services to under-represented groups. *Health Technol Assess* 2004;**8**(41).

Health Technology Assessment is indexed in *Index Medicus/MEDLINE* and *Excerpta Medica/EMBASE*.

NHS R&D HTA Programme

The research findings from the NHS R&D Health Technology Assessment (HTA) Programme directly influence key decision-making bodies such as the National Institute for Clinical Excellence (NICE) and the National Screening Committee (NSC) who rely on HTA outputs to help raise standards of care. HTA findings also help to improve the quality of the service in the NHS indirectly in that they form a key component of the 'National Knowledge Service' that is being developed to improve the evidence of clinical practice throughout the NHS.

The HTA Programme was set up in 1993. Its role is to ensure that high-quality research information on the costs, effectiveness and broader impact of health technologies is produced in the most efficient way for those who use, manage and provide care in the NHS. 'Health technologies' are broadly defined to include all interventions used to promote health, prevent and treat disease, and improve rehabilitation and long-term care, rather than settings of care.

The HTA programme commissions research only on topics where it has identified key gaps in the evidence needed by the NHS. Suggestions for topics are actively sought from people working in the NHS, the public, consumer groups and professional bodies such as Royal Colleges and NHS Trusts.

Research suggestions are carefully considered by panels of independent experts (including consumers) whose advice results in a ranked list of recommended research priorities. The HTA Programme then commissions the research team best suited to undertake the work, in the manner most appropriate to find the relevant answers. Some projects may take only months, others need several years to answer the research questions adequately. They may involve synthesising existing evidence or designing a trial to produce new evidence where none currently exists.

Additionally, through its Technology Assessment Report (TAR) call-off contract, the HTA Programme is able to commission bespoke reports, principally for NICE, but also for other policy customers, such as a National Clinical Director. TARs bring together evidence on key aspects of the use of specific technologies and usually have to be completed within a limited time period.

Criteria for inclusion in the HTA monograph series

Reports are published in the HTA monograph series if (1) they have resulted from work commissioned for the HTA Programme, and (2) they are of a sufficiently high scientific quality as assessed by the referees and editors.

Reviews in *Health Technology Assessment* are termed 'systematic' when the account of the search, appraisal and synthesis methods (to minimise biases and random errors) would, in theory, permit the replication of the review by others.

The research reported in this monograph was commissioned by the HTA Programme as project number 99/21/02. As funder, by devising a commissioning brief, the HTA Programme specified the research question and study design. The authors have been wholly responsible for all data collection, analysis and interpretation and for writing up their work. The HTA editors and publisher have tried to ensure the accuracy of the authors' report and would like to thank the referees for their constructive comments on the draft document. However, they do not accept liability for damages or losses arising from material published in this report.

The views expressed in this publication are those of the authors and not necessarily those of the HTA Programme or the Department of Health.

Editor-in-Chief: Professor Tom Walley
Series Editors: Dr Peter Davidson, Professor John Gabbay, Dr Chris Hyde,
Dr Ruairidh Milne, Dr Rob Riemsma and Dr Ken Stein
Managing Editors: Sally Bailey and Caroline Ciupek

ISSN 1366-5278

© Queen's Printer and Controller of HMSO 2004

This monograph may be freely reproduced for the purposes of private research and study and may be included in professional journals provided that suitable acknowledgement is made and the reproduction is not associated with any form of advertising.

Applications for commercial reproduction should be addressed to NCCHTA, Mailpoint 728, Boldrewood, University of Southampton, Southampton, SO16 7PX, UK.

Published by Gray Publishing, Tunbridge Wells, Kent, on behalf of NCCHTA.
Printed on acid-free paper in the UK by St Edmundsbury Press Ltd, Bury St Edmunds, Suffolk.



Abstract

Provision, uptake and cost of cardiac rehabilitation programmes: improving services to under-represented groups

AD Beswick,¹ K Rees,¹ I Griebisch,² FC Taylor,³ M Burke,¹ RR West,⁴ J Victory,⁵ J Brown,² RS Taylor⁶ and S Ebrahim^{1*}

¹ Department of Social Medicine, University of Bristol, UK

² MRC Health Services Research Collaboration, Department of Social Medicine, University of Bristol, UK

³ Bristol Heart Institute, University of Bristol, UK

⁴ Wales Heart Research Institute, University of Wales College of Medicine, Cardiff, UK

⁵ United Bristol Healthcare NHS Trust, UK

⁶ Department of Public Health and Epidemiology, University of Birmingham, UK

* Corresponding author

Objectives: To estimate UK need for outpatient cardiac rehabilitation, current provision and identification of patient groups not receiving services. To conduct a systematic review of literature on methods to improve uptake and adherence to cardiac rehabilitation. To estimate cost implications of increasing uptake of cardiac rehabilitation.

Data sources: Hospital Episode Statistics (England). Hospital Inpatient Systems (Northern Ireland). Patients Episode Database for Wales. British Association for Cardiac Rehabilitation/British Heart Foundation surveys. Cardiac rehabilitation centres. Patients from general hospitals. Electronic databases.

Review methods: The study analysed hospital discharge statistics to ascertain the population need for outpatient cardiac rehabilitation in the UK. Surveys of cardiac rehabilitation programmes were conducted to determine UK provision, uptake and audit activity, and to identify local interventions to improve uptake. Data were also examined from a trial estimating eligibility for cardiac rehabilitation and non-attendance. A systematic review of interventions to improve patient uptake, adherence and professional compliance in cardiac rehabilitation was conducted. Estimated costs of improving uptake were identified from national survey, systematic review and sampled cardiac rehabilitation programmes.

Results: In England, Wales and Northern Ireland nearly 146,000 patients discharged from hospital with primary diagnosis of acute myocardial infarction, unstable angina or following revascularisation were potentially eligible for cardiac rehabilitation. In England in 2000, 45–67% of these patients were referred, with 27–41%

attending outpatient cardiac rehabilitation. If all discharge diagnoses of ischaemic heart disease were considered, nearly 299,000 patients would be potentially eligible and in England rates of attendance and referral would be 22–33% and 13–20% respectively. Rates of referral and attendance were similar in Wales, but somewhat lower in Northern Ireland. It was found that referral and attendance of older people and women at cardiac rehabilitation tended to be low. It was also suggested that patients from ethnic minorities and those with angina or heart failure were less likely to be referred to or join programmes. A wide range of local interventions suggested awareness of the problem of uptake. In an NHS-funded randomised controlled trial, possibly representing more optimal protocol-led care, medical and nursing staff identified 73–81% of patients with acute myocardial infarction as eligible for cardiac rehabilitation. Excluded patients tended to be older with more severe presentation of cardiac disease. Experiences of patients suggested that uptake may be improved by addressing issues of motivation and relevance of rehabilitation to future well-being, co-morbidities, site and time of programme, transport and care for dependants. Systematic review of studies supported the use of letters, pamphlets or home visits to motivate patients and the use of trained lay visitors. Self-management techniques showed some value in promoting adherence to lifestyle changes. Studies examining professional compliance found that professional support for practice nurses may have value in the coordination of postdischarge care. Average costs in 2001 of cardiac rehabilitation to the health

service per patient completing a cardiac rehabilitation programme were about £350 (staff only) and £490 (total). If services were modelled on an intermediate multidisciplinary configuration with three to five key staff, approximately 13% more patients could be treated with the same budget. Depending on staffing configuration an approximate 200–790% budget increase would be required to provide cardiac rehabilitation to all potentially eligible patients.

Conclusions: Provision of outpatient cardiac rehabilitation in the UK is low and little is known about the capacity of cardiac rehabilitation centres to increase this provision. There is an uncoordinated approach to audit data collection and few interventions aimed at improving the situation have been formally evaluated. Motivational communications and trained lay volunteers may improve uptake of cardiac rehabilitation, as may self-management techniques. Experience of low-cost interventions and good practice exists within rehabilitation centres, although cost information

frequently is not reported. Increased provision of outpatient cardiac rehabilitation will require extra resources. Further trials are required to compare the cost-effectiveness of comprehensive multidisciplinary rehabilitation with simpler outpatient programmes, also research is needed into economic and patient preference studies of the effects of different methods of using increased funding for cardiac rehabilitation. An evaluation of a range of interventions to promote attendance in all patients and under-represented groups would also be useful. The development of standards is suggested for audit methods and for eligibility criteria, as well as regular and comprehensive data collection to estimate the need for and provision of cardiac rehabilitation. Further areas for intervention could be identified through qualitative studies, and the extension of low-cost interventions and good practice within rehabilitation centres. Regularly updated systematic reviews of relevant literature would also be useful.



Contents

List of abbreviations	vii	Introduction	23
Executive summary	ix	Methods	23
1 Background	1	Results	23
Cardiac rehabilitation	1	Discussion	26
Effectiveness in patients with coronary		Conclusions	27
heart disease	1	7 Systematic review of interventions to	
Effectiveness in specific patient groups	2	improve uptake, adherence and	
Uptake of cardiac rehabilitation	2	professional compliance with cardiac	
Under-representation in cardiac		rehabilitation	29
rehabilitation	2	Definitions	29
Barriers to uptake and adherence	4	Objective	29
Economic aspects of cardiac		Methods	29
rehabilitation	5	8 Systematic review of interventions to	
Conclusions	6	improve uptake of cardiac	
2 Objectives	7	rehabilitation	31
3 Population need for cardiac rehabilitation		Background	31
in the UK	9	Results	31
Objectives	9	Discussion	34
Background	9	Conclusions	38
Methods	9	9 Systematic review of interventions to improve	
Results	10	adherence to cardiac rehabilitation	39
Discussion	11	Background	39
Conclusions	12	Results	39
4 Provision and uptake of cardiac		Discussion	45
rehabilitation in the UK: national survey		Conclusions	48
of UK cardiac rehabilitation services	13	10 Systematic review of interventions to	
Objective	13	improve professional compliance with	
Methods	13	cardiac rehabilitation	49
Results	13	Background	49
Conclusions	15	Results	49
5 Audit of cardiac rehabilitation in England:		Discussion	52
National Service Framework for Coronary		Conclusions	53
Heart Disease recommendations	17	11 Health service costs of cardiac	
Objective	17	rehabilitation in the UK	55
Background	17	Objectives	55
Methods	17	Health service costs associated with	
Results	17	cardiac rehabilitation	55
Discussion	19	The national budget attributable to	
Conclusions	20	cardiac rehabilitation	58
6 Uptake and adherence in a randomised		Discussion	60
controlled trial of cardiac rehabilitation		Conclusions	63
after myocardial infarction	23	12 Conclusions	65
Objective	23	What is the population need for cardiac	
		rehabilitation?	65

Who is not receiving cardiac rehabilitation?	65	Appendix 10 Flow diagram of the systematic review of interventions to improve adherence to cardiac rehabilitation (QUOROM statement flow diagram)	115
What is the effectiveness of different methods of improving uptake and of differential targeting of cardiac rehabilitation?	66	Appendix 11 Studies evaluating interventions to improve adherence to cardiac rehabilitation	117
What is the potential budget impact of increasing uptake of cardiac rehabilitation using different uptake interventions?	68	Appendix 12 Studies excluded from the review of methods to improve adherence to cardiac rehabilitation	129
13 Key findings	71	Appendix 13 Flow diagram of the systematic review of interventions to improve professional compliance with cardiac rehabilitation (QUOROM statement flow diagram)	131
Implications for healthcare	71	Appendix 14 Studies evaluating interventions to improve professional compliance with cardiac rehabilitation	133
Acknowledgements	73	Appendix 15 Studies excluded from the review of interventions to improve professional compliance with cardiac rehabilitation	139
References	75	Appendix 16 Estimates for unit costs for different staff categories and grades	141
Appendix 1 Need for cardiac rehabilitation in the UK	83	Appendix 17 List of equipment	143
Appendix 2 Need for and estimated level of cardiac rehabilitation provision in the UK	87	Appendix 18 Staff input: average hours per week	145
Appendix 3 British Association for Cardiac Rehabilitation additional postal questionnaire	91	Appendix 19 Referral, uptake and completion rates for 30 randomly selected UK cardiac rehabilitation programmes in 2000	149
Appendix 4 Literature search strategies	95	Appendix 20 Average cost estimates for cardiac rehabilitation (detailed table)	151
Appendix 5 Inclusion/exclusion form	97	Health Technology Assessment reports published to date	153
Appendix 6 Data extraction form	99	Health Technology Assessment Programme	163
Appendix 7 Flow diagram of the systematic review of interventions to improve uptake of cardiac rehabilitation (QUOROM statement flow diagram)	103		
Appendix 8 Studies evaluating interventions to improve the uptake of cardiac rehabilitation	105		
Appendix 9 Studies excluded from the review of interventions to improve uptake of cardiac rehabilitation	113		



List of abbreviations

AMI	acute myocardial infarction	IQR	interquartile range
BACR	British Association for Cardiac Rehabilitation	MI	myocardial infarction
BHF	British Heart Foundation	NSF-CHD	National Service Framework for Coronary Heart Disease
CABG	coronary artery bypass graft	OR	odds ratio
CHD	coronary heart disease	PEDW	Patient Episode Database for Wales
CI	confidence interval	PTCA	percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty
CR	cardiac rehabilitation	QUOROM	quality of reporting of meta-analyses
HES	Hospital Episode Statistics (England)	RCT	randomised controlled trial
HF	heart failure	RR	relative risk
HIS	Hospital Inpatient Systems (Northern Ireland)	SD	standard deviation
ICD-10	International Classification of Diseases-10	UA	unstable angina
IHD	ischaemic heart disease	VAT	value added tax

All abbreviations that have been used in this report are listed here unless the abbreviation is well known (e.g. NHS), or it has been used only once, or it is a non-standard abbreviation used only in figures/tables/appendices in which case the abbreviation is defined in the figure legend or at the end of the table.



Executive summary

Background

The National Service Framework for Coronary Heart Disease (NSF-CHD) identifies patients with acute myocardial infarction and following coronary revascularisation as eligible for outpatient cardiac rehabilitation. However, rehabilitation uptake remains low, particularly in some specific patient groups. While many barriers to patient participation have been described, the effectiveness of interventions to improve uptake and adherence has not been assessed by systematic review. Furthermore, the cost implications of interventions to improve uptake and adherence and of increasing overall provision to meet total population need have not been estimated.

Objectives

- To estimate UK population need and update estimates of cardiac rehabilitation provision.
- To identify patient groups not receiving cardiac rehabilitation.
- To review effectiveness of methods to improve uptake and adherence to cardiac rehabilitation.
- To estimate cost implications of increasing uptake of cardiac rehabilitation.

Methods

- Analysis of hospital discharge statistics to ascertain the population need for outpatient cardiac rehabilitation in the UK.
- Surveys of cardiac rehabilitation programmes to determine UK provision, uptake and audit activity, and to identify local interventions to improve uptake. Estimation of eligibility for cardiac rehabilitation and non-attendance in a recent trial.
- Systematic review of interventions to improve patient uptake, adherence and professional compliance in cardiac rehabilitation.
- Assessment of costs of improving uptake identified from national survey, systematic review and sampled cardiac rehabilitation programmes.

Results

Population need and provision

In England, Wales and Northern Ireland nearly

146,000 patients discharged from hospital with a primary diagnosis of acute myocardial infarction, unstable angina or following revascularisation were potentially eligible for cardiac rehabilitation. In England in 2000, 45–67% of these patients were referred, with 27–41% attending outpatient cardiac rehabilitation. If all discharge diagnoses of ischaemic heart disease (including angina pectoris and heart failure) were considered, nearly 299,000 patients would be potentially eligible, with rates of referral and attendance of 22–33% and 13–20%, respectively. Rates of referral and attendance were similar in Wales, but somewhat lower in Northern Ireland.

Patient uptake

Referral and attendance of older people and women at cardiac rehabilitation tended to be low. There was a suggestion that patients from ethnic minorities and those with angina or heart failure were less likely to be referred to or join programmes. A wide range of local interventions suggested awareness of the problem of uptake.

The survey of cardiac rehabilitation centres in England identified an uncoordinated approach to audit, with variations in methods and content despite guidelines and the NSF requirements.

In an NHS-funded, multicentre, randomised controlled trial, possibly representing more optimal protocol-led care, medical and nursing staff identified 73–81% of patients with acute myocardial infarction as eligible for cardiac rehabilitation. Excluded patients tended to be older with more severe presentation of cardiac disease. Experiences of patients suggested that uptake may be improved by addressing issues of motivation and relevance of rehabilitation to future well-being, co-morbidities, site and time of programme, transport and care for dependants.

Systematic review

A comprehensive search strategy identified studies relating to uptake, adherence or professional compliance with cardiac rehabilitation. Of 3261 references identified, 957 were acquired as potentially relevant. Reports were frequently not published in easily accessible form. The majority of studies were small, of short duration and not of high quality. Consequently, none of the findings

can be considered definitive. Few studies reported cost implications.

Eight studies (three randomised) evaluated methods to improve patient uptake of cardiac rehabilitation. These supported the use of letters, pamphlets or home visits to motivate patients. Some encouragement was found for the use of trained lay visitors. Fourteen studies (seven randomised) evaluated methods to improve overall patient attendance or maintenance of lifestyle changes associated with cardiac rehabilitation. Self-management techniques showed some value in promoting adherence to lifestyle changes. Six studies (two randomised) evaluated methods to improve patient uptake and adherence to cardiac rehabilitation by improving professional compliance with guidelines and good practice. Although no effective interventions specifically aimed at improving professional compliance were found, professional support for practice nurses may have value in the coordination of postdischarge care.

Healthcare costs

Average costs in 2001 of cardiac rehabilitation to the health service per patient completing a cardiac rehabilitation programme were about £350 (staff only) and £490 (total). It is estimated that outpatient cardiac rehabilitation represented an NHS cost of £15–24 million in the UK. Variation in cost per patient across centres was partly explained by the duration of rehabilitation and staff-to-patient ratio. If services were modelled on an intermediate multidisciplinary configuration with three to five key staff, approximately 13% more patients could be treated with the same budget. If the most modest services were provided, 40% more patients could be treated. Depending on staffing configuration an approximate 200–790% budget increase would be required to provide cardiac rehabilitation to all potentially eligible patients.

Conclusions

Implications for healthcare

- Provision of outpatient cardiac rehabilitation in the UK is low, well below the NSF-CHD goal of 85% of patients with acute myocardial infarction and following revascularisation being offered outpatient cardiac rehabilitation.
- Information on referral to and uptake of cardiac rehabilitation is incomplete, with widely varying estimates of provision, particularly in under-represented groups. Little is known about the

capacity of cardiac rehabilitation centres to increase provision.

- There is an uncoordinated approach to audit data collection.
- Reasons reported by patients for non-attendance are amenable to intervention, but few interventions have been formally evaluated.
- Many interventions aimed at improving patient uptake, adherence and professional compliance with guidelines and good practice have been proposed, but few have been formally evaluated.
- Motivational communications and trained lay volunteers may improve uptake of cardiac rehabilitation.
- Self-management techniques may help to promote lifestyle change associated with cardiac rehabilitation.
- Information on costs of interventions is frequently not reported.
- Experience of low-cost interventions and good practice exists within rehabilitation centres.
- Increased provision of outpatient cardiac rehabilitation will require extra resources.

Recommendations for research and development

- Trials comparing the cost-effectiveness of comprehensive multidisciplinary rehabilitation with simpler outpatient programmes.
- Economic and patient preference studies of the effects of different methods of using increased funding for cardiac rehabilitation, and evaluations of the impact of any increased funding.
- Evaluation of a range of interventions (including self-management techniques, motivational communication and the use of trained lay volunteers) to promote attendance in all patients and under-represented groups.
- Development of standardised audit methods in the context of modern records systems, appropriate training for dedicated staff and dialogue between service contributors. Standardisation of criteria for patient eligibility, regular and comprehensive data collection to estimate the need for and provision of cardiac rehabilitation.
- Identification of further areas for intervention through qualitative studies.
- Extension of low-cost interventions and good practice within rehabilitation centres.
- Regular updated systematic review of literature relating to uptake and adherence to cardiac rehabilitation to include 'grey' literature and non-UK studies.

Chapter I

Background

Cardiac rehabilitation

Comprehensive cardiac rehabilitation offers patients with coronary heart disease a long-term programme involving medical evaluation, 'prescribed' exercise, cardiac risk factor modification, education and counselling.¹ In partnership with a multidisciplinary team of health professionals, patients with cardiac disease are encouraged and supported to achieve and maintain optimal physical and psychosocial health.²

In the UK cardiac rehabilitation usually comprises four phases³ in which the themes of exercise, education, psychological support and counselling are addressed to a level appropriate to the stage of recovery. Throughout, consideration is given to the processes of explanation and understanding,⁴ and the overall aim of long-term maintenance of a healthy lifestyle.

The first phase takes the form of counselling with a simple programme of education and psychological support while in hospital.⁵ Physical, psychological and social needs for cardiac rehabilitation are assessed and advice is given on everyday activities with encouragement to take light exercise in the first few weeks at home, the second phase of rehabilitation. Home visiting and telephone contact, and the use of educational materials or a supervised self-help programme, provide support during this period. The third phase of rehabilitation is delivered in an outpatient setting by appropriate health professionals and lasts typically for 6–8 weeks. Key programme elements are supervised exercise, education on secondary prevention and risk factor modification, and psychological approaches to recovery. Maintenance of healthy behaviours after completion of the outpatient programme is the fourth phase of cardiac rehabilitation. Continued exercise and adherence with lifestyle changes may be mediated through a cardiac support group.

Effectiveness in patients with coronary heart disease

The effectiveness of cardiac rehabilitation has

been the subject of several randomised trials and reviews.^{6–9} Most recently, a Cochrane systematic review concluded that exercise-based cardiac rehabilitation is effective in reducing cardiac deaths, cardiovascular morbidity and primary risk factors in patients who have had myocardial infarction.¹⁰ An earlier overview of the evidence conducted by the NHS Centre for Reviews and Dissemination stated that a combination of exercise, psychological and educational interventions is the most effective form of cardiac rehabilitation,¹¹ but the efficacy of combinations and durations of different components of the rehabilitation package remains uncertain. In England, the National Service Framework for Coronary Heart Disease (NSF-CHD) concluded that there is scope for improving services so that all those in need are offered rehabilitation.¹²

Evidence for the effectiveness of cardiac rehabilitation mainly derives from studies of patients with myocardial infarction and there are insufficient data to stratify systematic reviews by indication.¹⁰ However, the inclusion in reviewed trials of patients who have undergone revascularisation, that is, coronary artery bypass graft (CABG) or percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty (PTCA), or who have had angina pectoris or coronary artery disease defined by angiography suggests the possibility of benefit for these groups. Furthermore, while there is no conclusive evidence that cardiac rehabilitation reduces mortality in patients with heart failure, a recent systematic review looking specifically at exercise interventions found physiological benefits and positive effects on quality of life in selected subgroups.¹³

Guidelines recommend that outpatient cardiac rehabilitation should be available for patients following myocardial infarction, PTCA and CABG, and for patients with angina, heart failure¹⁴ and arrhythmia.^{15,16} The Fifth Report on the Provision of Services for Patients with Coronary Heart Disease states that in the UK patients must have access to rehabilitation when required, for example after a heart attack, cardiac surgery and intervention.¹⁷ In England the NSF-CHD identifies patients who have survived acute myocardial infarction and those who have

undergone CABG or PTCA as priorities for cardiac rehabilitation.¹² When high-quality cardiac rehabilitation is available to these patients the NSF-CHD recommends that services should be extended to patients with angina and heart failure. In Wales, cardiac rehabilitation should be provided for all those who have had an episode of acute coronary syndrome, some of whom will have undergone a revascularisation procedure.¹⁸ The Canadian Association for Cardiac Rehabilitation states that cardiac rehabilitation should be considered standard, usual care for virtually all patients with documented cardiovascular disease.¹⁹

Effectiveness in specific patient groups

Evidence for the effectiveness of cardiac rehabilitation in older and female patients is limited, as participants in trials tend to be younger and predominantly male. In the most recent systematic review the mean age of patients in exercise only studies was 53 years (range of means 50–70 years) and in trials of comprehensive cardiac rehabilitation 56 years (range of means 47–63 years).¹⁰ Women comprised 4% of patients in exercise-only and 11% of patients in comprehensive cardiac rehabilitation trials. Trials show a bias towards the inclusion of men and most excluded older people. However, systematic reviews provide no evidence to suggest that elderly or female patients benefit less than younger or male patients.¹⁰ Indeed, it is possible that the patients who would benefit most from cardiac rehabilitation are those excluded from trials on the grounds of age, gender or co-morbidity.²⁰

In elderly patients the goals of cardiac rehabilitation may differ from those of younger patients, and include the preservation of mobility, self-sufficiency and mental function.²¹ Cardiac rehabilitation may represent an opportunity to provide effective healthcare and achieve a high quality of life for older patients.²² Similarly, the frequently lower level of fitness observed in women at the time of hospitalisation suggests a greater potential for health improvement with cardiac rehabilitation.^{23,24}

In trials of cardiac rehabilitation the ethnic background of patients is seldom reported,¹⁰ but it is likely that trial participants are mainly white Caucasian. There is neither evidence nor a mechanism to suggest lack of benefit in ethnic minority groups.¹¹

Thus, evidence from randomised controlled trials (RCTs), as demonstrated in *Figure 1*, supports the effectiveness of cardiac rehabilitation in a range of cardiac diagnoses including post-myocardial infarction, post-PTCA, post-CABG, angina pectoris and heart failure. To date, although patients with different cardiac conditions, and female, elderly and non-white Caucasian ethnic groups, have been poorly represented in trials of cardiac rehabilitation there is no evidence to suggest that outcomes are less favourable.

Uptake of cardiac rehabilitation

Although it is considered effective in quickening recovery and improving prognosis, not all patients participate in a cardiac rehabilitation programme. Several recent UK surveys have reported the uptake of cardiac rehabilitation by patients with a discharge diagnosis of coronary heart disease.^{25–29} These are summarised in *Table 1*.

Surveys in the UK show low levels of patient participation (14–43% after myocardial infarction) with similarly low attendance reported in Australia,³⁰ France,³¹ New Zealand³² and the USA.^{33–35} Low patient participation is a consequence of low levels of provision, referral and invitation, and of poor uptake by patients.

Under-representation in cardiac rehabilitation

Patients participating in cardiac rehabilitation programmes have tended to be male, middle-aged and diagnosed with uncomplicated myocardial infarction.³⁶ Those who do not participate in a programme often have greater degrees of functional impairment and are the patients most in need of and most likely to benefit from rehabilitation.²⁰

Variation in referral rates for patients with different cardiac diagnoses reflects the traditional indication for cardiac rehabilitation services of myocardial infarction and CABG.³⁷ CABG patients tend to be younger than those with myocardial infarction and this may explain some of the increased rehabilitation uptake seen after CABG (see *Table 1*).²⁶ Patients admitted for PTCA are less likely to be invited or participate, probably as a consequence of the short hospital stay and the limited opportunities for recruitment. Also, the procedure is less invasive and painful than CABG, with a quicker recovery and return to work and

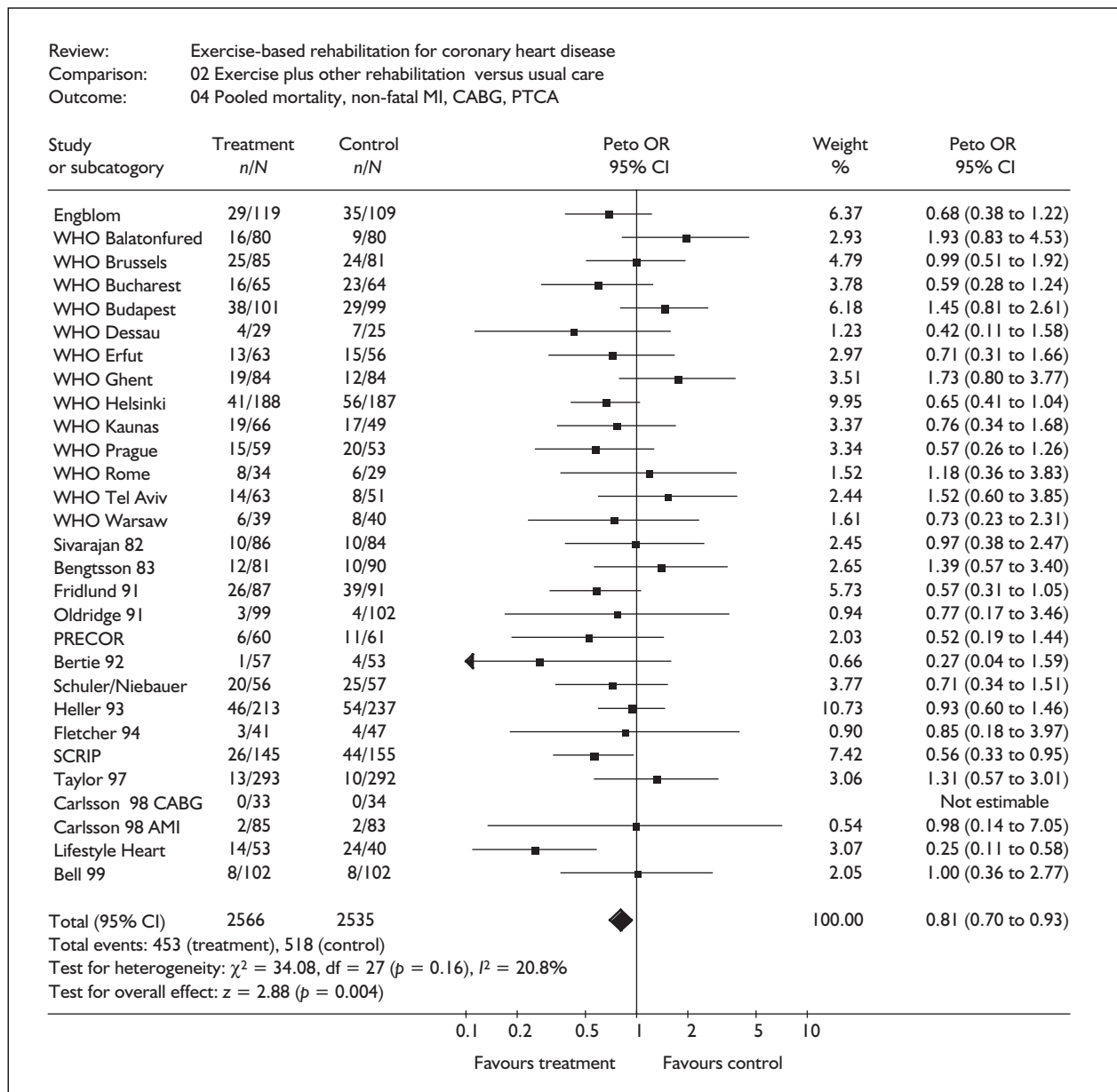


FIGURE 1 RCTs of the effects of cardiac rehabilitation. Source: Jolliffe et al., 2002¹⁰ with permission of The Cochrane Library. CI, confidence interval; MI, myocardial infarction; OR, odds ratios; WHO, World Health Organization.

normal activities.^{38,39} Heart failure patients are less likely to be referred for cardiac rehabilitation than other cardiac patients⁴⁰ and the complexity of the medical condition is identified as a barrier to physician referral.⁴¹ In the UK few programmes recruit heart failure patients, possibly reflecting the perceived need for further evaluation of effectiveness and safety in this patient group.⁴² In England, provision for both heart failure and angina may be limited by the priorities identified in the NSF-CHD: “once Trusts have an effective system recruiting people who have survived a myocardial infarction or who have undergone

coronary revascularisation to high quality cardiac rehabilitation, they should extend their rehabilitation services to people admitted to hospital with other manifestations of coronary heart disease, e.g. angina and heart failure.”¹²

Patients with chronic non-cardiac medical disorders may be excluded from cardiac rehabilitation.⁴³ Medical reasons for non-invitation include impaired mobility, more severe angina and peripheral arterial disease,²⁹ chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and asthma,³⁹ arthritis and back problems,⁴⁴ and alcohol addiction.⁴⁵

TABLE 1 Uptake of cardiac rehabilitation in recent UK surveys

Author	Year of survey	Region	Study design	Total no. of eligible patients	Participation as percentage of eligible patients
Evans <i>et al.</i> , 2002 ²⁵	2000	UK	CR programme survey compared with BHF statistics	208,080 total (calculated from percentages)	17% MI 44% CABG 6% PTCA
Bethell <i>et al.</i> , 2001 ²⁶	1997	UK	CR programme survey compared with BHF statistics	150,000 total	14–23% MI 33–56% CABG 6–10% PTCA
Melville <i>et al.</i> , 1999 ²⁷	1996	Nottingham	CR enrolment lists compared with hospital discharge	261	43% MI
Campbell <i>et al.</i> , 1996 ²⁸	1994	Scotland	CR programme survey compared with CHD survival	29,294 (calculated from 4980 = 17% of total)	17% CHD
Pell <i>et al.</i> , 1996 ²⁹	1994	Glasgow	CR department lists compared with hospital discharge	887	21% MI (12% completed)

BHF, British Heart Foundation; CHD, coronary heart disease; CR, cardiac rehabilitation.

Rehospitalisation, health deterioration and placement in a nursing home are also associated with reduced participation in cardiac rehabilitation.⁴⁶ Patients with communication difficulties including short-term memory loss and confusion, poor cognitive functioning or neurological impairment may be less likely to participate in cardiac rehabilitation,^{39,46–48} and a greater dropout rate has been observed in patients with symptoms of depression.⁴⁹

Older patients may not receive the same amount of advice from physicians on cardiac risk reduction as younger patients.⁴⁶ Invitation to cardiac rehabilitation is often lower in older patients.^{3,29,32,33,39,41,43,46,49–52} In a US survey older patients expressed a preference for home-based programmes, whereas younger patients preferred comprehensive clinic-based programmes.⁵³

Women tend to be under-represented in cardiac rehabilitation.^{20,32,33,43,54} Referral rates may be lower,^{33,43} possibly reflecting the increased age of women presenting with cardiovascular disease⁵⁵ and the presence of co-morbid conditions.²⁰ Women may be reluctant to participate in formal cardiac rehabilitation⁵⁶ and perceived as less motivated to attend structured programmes with strenuous exercise.²³ However, rehabilitation professionals may seem less helpful and less encouraging in promoting cardiac rehabilitation

for women.⁵⁷ Invitation to a predominantly male exercise group may also serve to discourage participation by women.⁵⁷

Participation rates of patients living in areas of high social deprivation are low, probably reflecting reduced uptake rather than referral.^{27,29,58,59} Patients with no paid employment may also be less likely to attend a cardiac rehabilitation programme.⁵⁹

In a survey of Canadian cardiac rehabilitation programmes participation by non-English-speaking patients was seen to be considerably lower than by English-speaking patients.³⁹ No similar surveys have been published in the UK, but a retrospective hospital audit found low attendance at cardiac rehabilitation among patients of South Asian origin.⁶⁰ This was attributed to poor access and inadequate use of interpreting services by patients and staff, and lack of translated written information.

Barriers to uptake and adherence

Cardiac rehabilitation should be accessible and acceptable to patients. A balance must be achieved between a programme of sufficient intensity and duration to be effective, and the tendency of a long programme to encourage dependence in some and dropout in others.⁶¹ Many patients

make recommended lifestyle changes, but others make no change or find it difficult to maintain new behaviours.⁶² The initial improvements in exercise tolerance and psychosocial well-being observed in some trials are not evident over the longer term and this has been attributed to reductions in compliance.⁶³ Patients and providers have identified numerous possible reasons for low levels of uptake, adherence and professional compliance with cardiac rehabilitation.⁶⁴

Some patients show a lack of interest and are reluctant to change their lifestyle.^{14,41,46,59,65,66} Affective reactions to disease can lead to maladaptive responses and fear.^{44,66,67} The patient may not perceive that they will benefit from participating in a programme or may receive contradictory advice from other sources.^{41,51,68,69} Conversely, after a short period of rehabilitation patients may be satisfied and choose to continue independently.⁷⁰ Patients may dislike classes or the hospital setting.^{34,51}

Patterns of personal or family living can influence participation in cardiac rehabilitation.⁷¹ Conflicting work or domestic commitments and time conflicts are associated with reduced attendance at cardiac rehabilitation.^{24,51,66,70} Lack of family support may be a barrier to uptake of cardiac rehabilitation services.^{44,66}

In the USA, reimbursement issues and cost of rehabilitation services limit attendance at cardiac rehabilitation.^{14,34} Patients with insurance coverage for cardiac rehabilitation are more likely to be referred and programme directors identify financial issues as the major barrier for rehabilitation uptake.³⁷ Fee-for-service patients are more likely to receive cardiac rehabilitation than health maintenance organisation patients.⁷² A requirement for continuous ECG monitoring during exercise sessions, physician evaluation of traces and exercise prescription also limits rehabilitation provision.⁷³

Cardiologists may be more likely to refer patients to cardiac rehabilitation than primary care physicians.^{14,29,50,66} Differing rates of referral may reflect professional scepticism or a poor knowledge base about the effectiveness of cardiac rehabilitation^{39,46,62} and it is possible that physicians recommend rehabilitation to younger patients or those expected to comply.^{46,74} The source of referral may also influence patient attendance at cardiac rehabilitation, with physician referral and in particular that of a cardiologist shown to improve uptake.^{29,39,40,75}

The location, convenience and accessibility of a cardiac rehabilitation programme influence attendance.^{14,34,41,43,66,76} Patients living closer to the programme are more likely to receive a referral and attend.^{37,52,65} Patients living in cities or urban areas are more likely to attend cardiac rehabilitation.^{39,77} Inconvenient transportation, lack of and cost of transport, and parking problems are frequently cited as barriers to attendance at cardiac rehabilitation.^{34,51,70}

Barriers to uptake and adherence may be summarised as follows.

Patient factors:

- lack of interest
- reluctance to change lifestyle
- depression
- dislike of classes/hospitals
- work or domestic commitments
- lack of family support
- rural residence.

Service factors:

- cost and reimbursement
- ECG monitoring requirement
- location and accessibility
- car parking

Professional factors:

- knowledge and attitudes
- referral
- prejudice (age, race, gender).

Economic aspects of cardiac rehabilitation

Costs of cardiac rehabilitation services vary by format of delivery. The German approach to cardiac rehabilitation with 4–6 weeks of inpatient care is estimated to cost about seven times that of an outpatient service.⁷⁸ Information on the direct costs of outpatient cardiac rehabilitation as provided in the UK is limited. The results of recent UK costs studies^{25,79–82} are shown in *Table 2*.

Comparison of studies is difficult as the authors used different methodologies and sources of cost estimates. The most recent BACR/BHF survey suggests that cost varies widely, with a range of £50–712 per patient treated depending on the level of staffing, the equipment used and the intensity of the programme.²⁵ Staffing represents the most important share, with estimates of 64–80% of total direct costs.^{79,81}

TABLE 2 Studies reporting costs of cardiac rehabilitation in the UK

Author	Year	Type of programme	Costs considered	Results
Evans <i>et al.</i> , 2002 ²⁵	2000	Annual BACR/BHF survey: budget statements from 37 centres	Staff costs, possibly some allowances for stationery	£50–712 per patient (median £256) (2000 prices)
Osika, 2001 ⁸²	1997/98	Based on four cardiac rehabilitation centres in Gwent	Staff costs, non-staff costs (not specified)	£292 per patient, range £250–375 (1997–98 prices)
Taylor and Kirby, 1999 ⁸¹	1995	One UK centre with 12-week programme with two outpatient visits	Staff costs, equipment costs, capital costs, transport	£140 per patient £6 per patient per session (1995 prices)
Gray <i>et al.</i> , 1997 ⁸⁰	1994	Survey of 16 UK centres with an average of 9.2 sessions per patient (10.2 hours per patient)	Staff costs	£371 per patient (median £223), £47 per patient per session (median £26) (1994 prices)
Turner, 1993 ⁷⁹	1992	Based on ten cardiac rehabilitation programmes in the Wessex region	Staff costs, overhead costs, equipment costs, capital costs	£200 per patient (1992 prices)

BACR, British Association for Cardiac Rehabilitation.

Little information is available on the costs of establishing or expanding a rehabilitation service. Previously, it was considered that the resources needed to establish a cardiac rehabilitation programme were present in most district hospitals.^{3,83} With changes in healthcare management and increasing demands on facilities and space this may not now be the case.

Conclusions

Outpatient cardiac rehabilitation should be available to patients with a range of cardiovascular diagnoses and after revascularisation procedures. Previous surveys have suggested that uptake of outpatient cardiac rehabilitation services is low, with specific patient groups under-represented. To quantify the shortfall in cardiac rehabilitation service availability and uptake, estimates of current UK need and provision are required.

Barriers to participation in outpatient cardiac rehabilitation have been identified, but the effectiveness of interventions to improve uptake and adherence has not been assessed by systematic review. Such a review is needed to identify appropriate methods for increasing service use and to suggest areas meriting further research.

Previous economic evaluations of cardiac rehabilitation services have given a wide range of cost estimates and little information on costs other than those attributable to staffing. A thorough assessment of current UK costs of services is needed to include staff, overhead, equipment and capital costs. Furthermore, if greater numbers of patients are to receive outpatient cardiac rehabilitation an estimate of the cost implications of increasing provision by the establishment of new or expansion of existing services is required.

Chapter 2

Objectives

The questions posed in this project are as follows.

- What is the population need for cardiac rehabilitation?
- Who is not receiving cardiac rehabilitation?
- What is the effectiveness of different methods of improving uptake and of differential targeting of cardiac rehabilitation?
- What is the potential budget impact of increasing uptake of cardiac rehabilitation using different uptake interventions?

The questions will be tackled using the following sources of information:

- population need for cardiac rehabilitation in the UK from analyses of the English Hospital Episode Statistics (HES) and equivalent national databases
- provision and uptake of cardiac rehabilitation in the UK by means of a national survey of cardiac rehabilitation services, ad hoc surveys and audits

- uptake and adherence to cardiac rehabilitation from a recent multicentre RCT
- a systematic literature review of interventions to increase patient uptake, adherence and professional compliance with cardiac rehabilitation
- the costs associated with improving uptake and differential targeting of cardiac rehabilitation from the national survey, systematic review and costing data from sampled cardiac rehabilitation programmes.

Improving uptake of cardiac rehabilitation was conceived in a series of related stages: need for rehabilitation (in terms of ability to benefit from rehabilitation), coverage of existing services; pattern (i.e. by age, gender, ethnicity) of referral to services, and adherence in terms of both acceptance of invitation to attend services and completion of treatment. Interventions to improve uptake could be envisaged for each of these stages. This process is shown schematically in

Figure 2.

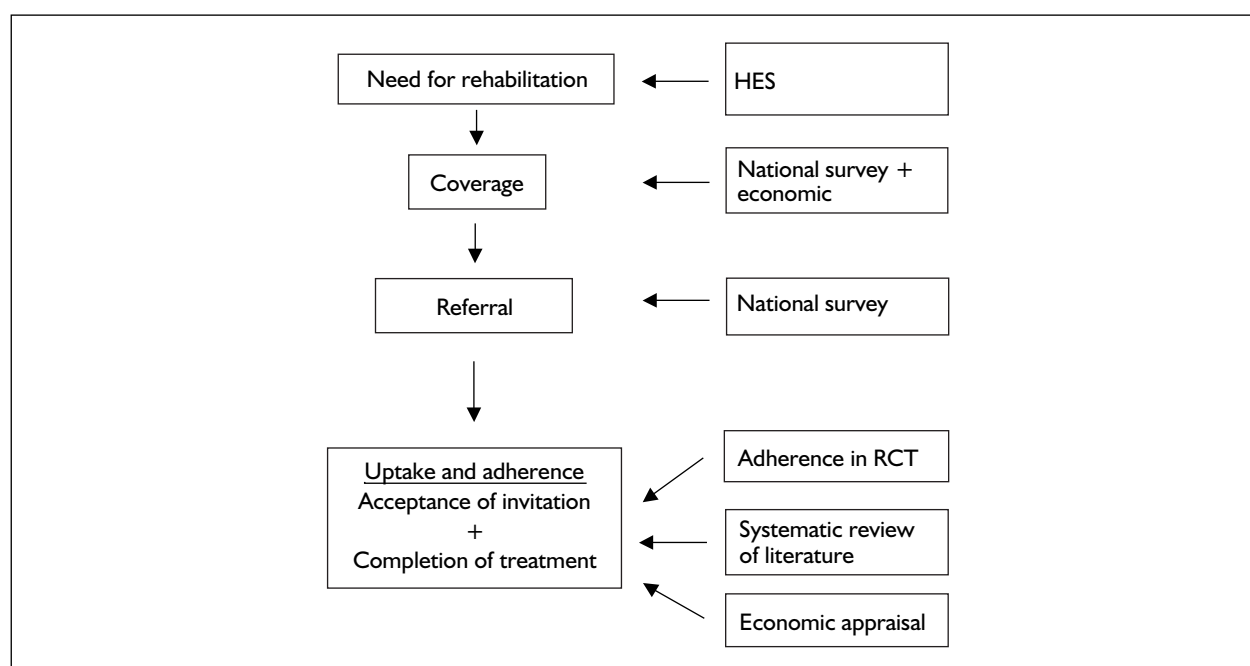


FIGURE 2 Improving the uptake of cardiac rehabilitation

Chapter 3

Population need for cardiac rehabilitation in the UK

Objectives

- Determination of the population need for cardiac rehabilitation in the UK by analysis of the English HES and similar national databases.
 - Estimation of the level of uptake of cardiac rehabilitation by patients with a discharge diagnosis of coronary heart disease.
1. acute myocardial infarction (ICD-10 code I21)
 2. heart failure (ICD-10 code I50)
 3. unstable angina (ICD-10 code I20.0)
 4. CABG (OPCS-4 codes K40–K46)
 5. PTCA (OPCS-4 codes K49–K50)
 6. CABG patients with one or more of the following discharge diagnoses or procedure codes: acute myocardial infarction, unstable angina, heart failure or PTCA
 7. all other ischaemic heart disease cases.

Background

The NSF-CHD states that every hospital should ensure that more than 85% of people discharged from hospital with a primary diagnosis of acute myocardial infarction or after coronary revascularisation are offered cardiac rehabilitation.¹² When cardiac rehabilitation is available to these patients, the NSF-CHD recommends that this service should be extended to patients with angina and heart failure. However, there is only limited information available on population need, that is, the total number of patients who may benefit from cardiac rehabilitation and the current nationwide level of service provision and patient uptake.

Methods

Data from the HES for England and similar sources for Wales [Patient Episode Database (PEDW)] and Northern Ireland [Hospital Inpatient Systems (HIS)] were used to estimate the need for cardiac rehabilitation, that is, the number of patients discharged from hospital who have the capacity to benefit from this therapy. Scottish data were not available. Data from England, Wales and Northern Ireland were collected from 1 April 1999 to 31 March 2000 and provide a comprehensive picture of the number of patients discharged from hospitals with particular conditions. Information was collected for all patients discharged alive from hospital with a primary diagnosis of ischaemic heart disease [International Classification of Diseases-10 (ICD-10) codes I20–I25]. Furthermore, data for subcategories of these patients were collected:

Categories 1–7 are mutually exclusive, so that patients are only recorded once using either diagnosis or procedure codes. In case of multiple events with the same code each patient was only counted once. When a person was admitted more than once in a year, each extra admission was included.

The total number of patients eligible to receive cardiac rehabilitation was derived by adding the numbers in categories 1–7. These data were stratified by gender and age groups. Population statistics⁸⁴ were used to derive rates per 100,000 individuals.

The uptake of cardiac rehabilitation by eligible patients was estimated. Data from the 2000 BACR/BHF survey of cardiac rehabilitation services and an additional short postal questionnaire (as described in Chapter 4) were used to obtain the number of services and to estimate the total number of patients referred and joining outpatient cardiac rehabilitation in England, Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland. In total, 284 centres were identified for the whole of the UK in 2000 (220 centres in England, 36 centres in Scotland, 18 centres in Wales and ten centres in Northern Ireland).

Of these, 191 (67%) responded to the additional questionnaire. Where a centre had not responded, a value relating to the upper interquartile range (IQR) derived from the responding centres was imputed and added to the aggregated figures of the responding centres to estimate the upper range of service provision for England. The lower range of service provision was similarly estimated by imputing, where data were missing for centres, the lower IQR derived from the responding

centres. Uptake was estimated from the number of eligible patients (using different need criteria given above) and the estimated number of patients referred, joining and completing cardiac rehabilitation. These estimates were then linked with the population need data.

Analyses were undertaken to estimate the level of uptake with different criteria of eligibility for cardiac rehabilitation:

- All patients with the above-mentioned discharge diagnoses and procedure codes were considered eligible.
- Only patients with acute myocardial infarction, unstable angina, CABG and PTCA were considered eligible.
- Only patients younger than 75 years were considered eligible.

The last two analyses were conducted by truncating the population data using these specified criteria.

Results

Based on hospital discharge statistics it was estimated that the total numbers of hospital discharged patients potentially eligible to receive cardiac rehabilitation in 2000 were as follows: England 266,833; Wales 17,560 and Northern Ireland 13,988. Total counts of discharged cases with acute myocardial infarction, heart failure,

unstable angina, CABG and PTCA stratified by country, gender, age group and rates of discharge diagnoses and procedure code per 100,000 persons are presented in Appendix 1 (*Tables 35–37*).

Table 3 shows the estimated number of patients referred to and joining outpatient cardiac rehabilitation programmes by country. More detailed information is shown in Appendix 2 (*Tables 38–41*). Age, gender and diagnosis-specific estimates of need could not be provided as only a minority of cardiac rehabilitation centres were able to supply relevant information broken down by the variables required to link estimates of need to service supply.

Similar proportions of all eligible patients in England and Wales were referred to cardiac rehabilitation (between 22 and 36%). However, the proportion of referred patients in Northern Ireland was significantly less (12–17%). The proportions of all eligible patients joining cardiac rehabilitation programmes in England and Wales were also similar (13–21%), but joining was less common in Northern Ireland (9–12%).

Using more limited criteria of need for cardiac rehabilitation considering only patients discharged with a diagnosis of acute myocardial infarction, unstable angina or a procedure code of CABG or PTCA as eligible, under-provision was less marked, with about 45–67% referred to and 27–41% joining cardiac programmes in England (see *Table 3* for other countries).

TABLE 3 Estimated uptake of cardiac rehabilitation by patients with different manifestations of coronary heart disease

	England	Wales	Scotland	Northern Ireland
Estimated number of patients referred to CR ^a	59,400–87,200	4,600–6,400	5,800–9,100	1,700–2,400
Estimated number of patients joining CR ^a	35,700–53,100	3,000–3,600	3,500–6,000	1,200–1,700
Eligibility criteria				
All patients	266,800	17,700	NA	14,000
% referred to CR	22–33%	26–36%	NA	12–17%
% joining CR	13–20%	17–21%	NA	9–12%
Patients with AMI, unstable angina, CABG and PTCA	131,100	7,900	NA	6,800
% referred to CR	45–67%	59–81%	NA	25–36%
% joining CR	27–41%	38–46%	NA	18–25%
Patients <75 years	202,000	12,700	NA	11,200
% referred to CR	30–43%	36–50%	NA	15–22%
% joining CR	18–26%	24–29%	NA	11–15%

^a Numbers estimated by imputing the IQR for non-responding centres.
AMI, acute myocardial infarction.

Provision was also estimated considering patients under age 75 years as eligible. This analysis suggests that 30–43% of patients were referred and 18–26% joined cardiac rehabilitation in England (see *Table 3* for other countries). A detailed summary of this analysis is displayed in Appendix 2 (*Tables 38–41*).

Discussion

The objective of this analysis was to estimate the population need for cardiac rehabilitation and to provide up-to-date information about the level of uptake of cardiac rehabilitation in the UK. This information should assist healthcare policy makers to improve the provision of cardiac rehabilitation services to all patients who have the capacity to benefit.

The analysis suggests that provision of cardiac rehabilitation at the inception of the NSF-CHD was low. This was still apparent when considering only patients with acute myocardial infarction, unstable angina, PTCA and CABG as eligible or, in a second analysis, only patients younger than 75 years.

There appears to be variation in service provision across the UK, with a higher proportion of eligible patients referred to and joining cardiac rehabilitation programmes in England and Wales than in Northern Ireland. Since the need for rehabilitation is substantially greater in Northern Ireland (and Scotland), this represents a considerable mismatch between uptake and need.

Although a different approach was used to estimate the level of service provision, the present findings are in concordance with previous research examining the relationship between need and supply. Bethell and colleagues estimated that between 14 and 23% of myocardial infarction patients, between 33 and 56% of CABG patients, and between 6 and 10% of PTCA patients attended cardiac rehabilitation in 1997.²⁶ The most recent update provided by the same group suggests that 17% of all myocardial infarction, 44% of all CABG and 6% of all PTCA patients received cardiac rehabilitation in 2000.²⁵ It should be emphasised, however, that this estimate was based on only 69% of all UK centres. The true level of provision may be higher if non-participating centres were providing a service with better referral and joining rates, but this seems improbable.

The analysis presented here illustrates the lack of comprehensive and reliable data to estimate the level of service provision and should be interpreted with some caution. By using data from the HES a number of assumptions had to be made to estimate need. Although patients managed at home or in the private sector will be missed, it may be assumed that the HES are complete and a primary diagnosis of ischaemic heart disease indicates a need for cardiac rehabilitation. Furthermore, it is assumed that each finished consultant episode for these diagnoses equates to one person; the ratio of spells to finished consultant episodes is generally around one.⁸⁵

However, the number of discharge diagnoses may be slightly higher than the number of patients because in some instances myocardial infarction patients receive revascularisation procedures such as CABG or PTCA within a few weeks. The time between these two distinctive admissions may not be sufficient for enrolment in a rehabilitation programme after the first event. The estimates assume that a patient suffering two or more events in a year represents a need for two (or more) courses of rehabilitation. This seems legitimate as such patients may be considered to be rehabilitation 'failures', and may have slipped through the net on earlier occasions.

Another potential limitation is the approach adopted to estimate the current level of service provision. These estimates are based on a postal survey with a response rate of 67% of the sampling frame of all cardiac rehabilitation centres existing in 2000 in the whole of the UK. Approximately 80% of these centres could provide data for the number of patients referred to and joining cardiac rehabilitation programmes and therefore the estimates are based on a sample of about 55% of all UK centres. However, by imputing the IQR to take account of missing data, the resulting estimates should provide a fair estimate of the current situation.

The apparent inability of centres to provide comprehensive activity data is possibly due to the lack of automated systems to extract these data, lack of audit facilities or centres being in the process of installing systems to collect audit data to satisfy the requirements of the NSF-CHD. Therefore, the current level of service provision could only be estimated indirectly by assuming that all patients with a primary diagnosis of ischaemic heart disease are eligible. Some limiting criteria of need were also used, namely restricting the eligibility for cardiac rehabilitation to certain

groups of patients (acute myocardial infarction, unstable angina, CABG and PTCA patients, and all ischaemic heart disease patients younger than 75 years). A more appropriate approach would be to obtain information on the number of patients referred to, joining and completing programmes stratified by gender, age and discharge diagnosis direct from cardiac rehabilitation centres and relate these to data that represent need, such as the HES, or to information obtained from hospitals in the catchment area of the rehabilitation service by means of comprehensive coronary heart disease registers.

It was not possible to assess the level of uptake of cardiac rehabilitation by patients of ethnic minority groups for two reasons. First, national hospital data stratified by ethnicity were only available for England. These were not completely

coded for ethnicity, with about 30% missing data. Second, as reported in Chapter 4, the majority of centres in the BACR/BHF survey were not able to provide data on the referral and uptake of cardiac rehabilitation by ethnic minority groups.

Conclusions

The analysis suggests that the level of service provision of cardiac rehabilitation during 2000 was low. Therefore, the achievement of the NSF-CHD goal of 85% of acute myocardial infarction and revascularisation patients receiving cardiac rehabilitation is far from fulfilled. In addition, the shortcomings of this analysis clearly emphasise the need for a more comprehensive data collection to estimate reliably the provision of cardiac rehabilitation services and its relationship to need.

Chapter 4

Provision and uptake of cardiac rehabilitation in the UK: national survey of UK cardiac rehabilitation services

Objective

- Assessment of the provision and uptake of cardiac rehabilitation in the UK by means of a national survey of cardiac rehabilitation services.

Methods

BACR, with financial backing from the BHF, has conducted several surveys of cardiac rehabilitation services in the UK.^{25,26,86} The authors of these reports have kindly provided this group with the data that they collected, and contact details of all services identified for the latest survey conducted in 2001, which included data from 1 January to 31 December 2000. This latest survey included questions concerning the total number of patients referred, joining and completing outpatient (phase 3) cardiac rehabilitation, the numbers broken down by diagnosis of myocardial infarction or cardiac surgery and by age groups and gender, time spent per week for each programme by various staff members, current funding and questions relating to outcome measures.

For the purposes of the current project there was also a need to know the numbers of patients from traditionally under-represented groups (women, the elderly, people from ethnic minority groups and people with heart failure or angina) referred, joining and completing cardiac rehabilitation programmes to be able to determine current service provision in these groups. There was also an interest in knowing how many services actively promoted adherence to programmes in these under-represented groups, and details of what interventions were used to achieve this. In terms of the extent of coverage and level of service provision, questions were asked for all patients and the study also sought to determine whether services had spare capacity for additional patients. A short postal questionnaire was devised specifically addressing these issues and sent to all those respondents of the 2000 BACR/BHF survey.

Results

By contacting the cardiac rehabilitation liaison person for each local health authority in the UK, 284 cardiac rehabilitation services were identified in 2000. Of these, 242 services responded to the BACR/BHF questionnaire, giving a response rate of 85%. The additional short postal questionnaire devised for the purposes of the current project (see letter of request and questionnaire in Appendix 3) was then sent to those respondents of the original survey, asking for information during the same period (1 January to 31 December 2000) so that data from the two sets of questionnaires could be linked. The response rate to this additional questionnaire following telephone prompting was 79% (191 questionnaires returned). Data returned were entered into a Microsoft Access database and transferred to STATA (Version 7) for data cleaning and analysis. Data are presented as proportions, medians, IQR and range, or means and standard deviations (SD).

Numbers of patients referred to, joining and completing cardiac rehabilitation programmes in 2000

Most services were able to provide this information, as shown by the relatively high number of responders in *Table 4* (maximum $n = 191$). Of the total number of patients referred, two-thirds of patients actually joined cardiac rehabilitation programmes and only half of those referred completed the programme. The number of patients attending individual programmes varied widely across the UK, as shown by the large ranges.

Capacity to increase provision

Thirty-one of 191 centres (16.2%) stated that they had spare capacity within their service, and could accommodate a median of four (two to 20) extra patients each week.

Level of service provision across the UK in 2000

The content of outpatient cardiac rehabilitation programmes was determined by the duration and

TABLE 4 Overall referral, uptake and completion rates for UK cardiac rehabilitation programmes in 2000

	Median	IQR	Range	No. of programmes	% of referrals
No. referred per centre	271	164–424	2–1564	156	
No. joined per centre	172	101–254	2–1066	153	63%
No. completed per centre	130	75–186	3–450	133	48%

TABLE 5 Level of service provision for cardiac rehabilitation programmes in 2000

	Weighted ^a mean (SD)	Range	No. ^b of programmes providing data
Exercise			
No. of weeks	7.4 (2.1)	1–12	144
No. of sessions per week	1.7 (1.5)	1–14	146
Average length of sessions (h)	1.2 (0.4)	0.5–3	145
Total time spent by patient (h) ^c	12.9 (1.7)	3–98	143
Average no. of patients per session	15.7 (6.2)	1–50	139
Health education			
No. of weeks	6.2 (2.1)	1–12	141
No. of sessions per week	1.3 (1.6)	0.25–14	141
Average length of sessions (h)	1.0 (0.4)	0.25–3	139
Total time spent by patient (h) ^c	7.0 (2.0)	0.75–98	139
Average no. of patients per session	16.1 (6.8)	1–40	132
Psychological intervention			
No. of weeks	5.0 (2.7)	1–12	126
No. of sessions per week	1.3 (1.5)	1–7	123
Average length of sessions (h)	0.8 (0.5)	0.17–2	122
Total time spent by patient (h) ^c	3.2 (2.0)	0.5–16	119
Average no. of patients per session	14.6 (6.1)	1–40	116

^a Weighted by the size of the service (number of patients who joined). Data not normally distributed were transformed before weighting.

^b Data were not provided for all questions by all services, so the numbers of respondents to each question are provided.

^c Calculated as the number of weeks multiplied by the number of sessions per week multiplied by the duration of the session in hours.

the number and length of sessions for each of the component parts: exercise, health education and psychological interventions (stress management and relaxation).

The mean values across services have been weighted by the number of patients joining each programme. Again, there was a reasonable response rate to these questions, as shown by the relatively high numbers who provided data. *Table 5* highlights just how variable the programme content and intensity of each intervention is across the UK. Overall, exercise is the dominant component, with the total time spent by a patient almost twice that of health education and four times that of psychological interventions. This reflects the origins of cardiac rehabilitation, the weight of evidence for benefit from exercise-based programmes and the expertise of the principal members of most rehabilitation programmes.

Under-represented groups: number of referrals, joiners and completers broken down by age, gender, diagnosis and ethnicity

Response rates to questions on numbers of patients referred to, joining and completing programmes from under-represented groups were much poorer. Reported reasons included lack of automated systems and audit facilities, or that centres were in the process of installing systems to collect audit data to satisfy the requirements of the NSF-CHD.¹² The representativeness of *Table 6* should therefore be interpreted with some caution. The numbers of patients with heart failure or angina, or from ethnic minority groups, were so small that it was not possible to look at the proportions of those referred, joining and completing rehabilitation. Similar proportions of joiners and completers relative to those referred were seen for postmyocardial infarction patients

TABLE 6 Under-represented groups: referral, uptake and completion rates for UK cardiac rehabilitation programmes in 2000

		Median per centre per year	IQR	Range	n ^a	% of referrals
No. of male patients	referred	213	111–334	2–1066	83	
	joined	118	66–185	2–747	84	55%
	completed	84	43–154	2–329	65	39%
No. of female patients	referred	85	36–130	1–498	83	
	joined	36	17–60	1–319	84	42%
	completed	27	12–45	0–140	65	32%
No. of patients aged >65	referred	142	61–228	0–887	66	
	joined	72	37–152	0–596	71	51%
	completed	54	30–110	4–212	51	38%
No. of black/Asian patients	referred	5	1–19	0–196	59	
	joined	2	0–7	0–127	63	
	completed					
No. of post-MI patients	referred	160	78–286	0–881	97	
	joined	91	49–149	0–446	88	57%
	completed	66	31–103	0–425	69	41%
No. of CABG patients	referred	86	47–142	0–563	91	
	joined	50	22–99	0–407	83	58%
	completed	45	13–82	0–367	65	52%
No. of HF patients	referred	0	0–2	0–28	61	
	joined	0	0–1	0–12	59	
	completed	0	0–1	0–9	46	
No. of angina patients	referred	6	0–27	0–200	71	
	joined	1	0–8	0–134	70	
	completed	0	0–5	0–73		

^a Data were not provided for all questions by all services, so the numbers of respondents to each question are provided. HF, heart failure.

(not an under-represented group, here only for comparison), the over 65-year-olds and male patients, with slightly fewer women joining rehabilitation programmes relative to those referred. The number of patients post-CABG referred for cardiac rehabilitation shows relatively higher rates of completion than other groups.

Efforts to promote attendance in under-represented groups

Finally each service was asked whether they made any special efforts to promote adherence to cardiac rehabilitation programmes in each of the under-represented groups, and to detail any interventions that they used to achieve this. Of those services (126/191, 66%) that indicated that they promoted attendance in at least one of the under-represented groups, 46% stated that they promoted attendance in women, 48% in the elderly, 55% in revascularisation patients, 34% in ethnic minority groups, and 17% and 18% in patients with heart failure and angina, respectively.

Of the 126 services that stated that they promoted attendance in under-represented groups, 97 provided details of the interventions that they used to achieve this. A member of the report team with extensive clinical experience of cardiac

rehabilitation delivery examined these free text responses. Among the under-represented groups there emerged themes of a variety of interventions that were being, or could be used generically, across the different patient groups, and some that were definitely more specific to each of the particular groups. These are presented in *Table 7*. The numbers in parentheses refer to the numbers of services which described each particular intervention. The majority of services that stated that they promoted adherence did so in a way that would benefit most patient groups; for example, follow-up phone calls, free transport, home visits and personalised invitations. Of those interventions that were specific to under-represented groups, individualised classes, appropriate 'buddy' systems, attendance of relative or spouse were among those most commonly stated. Direct referrals from surgery and specialist clinics were also used as methods to ensure uptake and adherence.

Conclusions

Although it is feasible to obtain useful information about means of improving uptake and adherence using ad hoc postal questionnaires, routine electronic audit data are likely to provide a more

TABLE 7 Interventions used by cardiac rehabilitation programmes to improve uptake and adherence (number of programmes reporting indicated intervention)

Any intervention (97)	
<p>Generic interventions</p> <p>Follow-up telephone call post-discharge (69)</p> <p>Preassessment clinic appointment and individualised coronary heart disease advice (58)</p> <p>Free organised transport (51)</p> <p>Home visit by specialist cardiac/BHF liaison nurse (43)</p> <p>Personalised invitation by letter or telephone to attend (42)</p> <p>Inpatient follow-up and verbal explanation (28)</p> <p>Non-attenders followed up and offered further appointments (26)</p> <p>Range and choice of menu options for classes (13)</p> <p>Community GP and practice nurse encourage attendance (5)</p> <p>Choice of sessions offered (venue/day/time) (5)</p> <p>Anxious patients met at the entrance of the venue (1)</p> <p>Travel grants and transport-sharing scheme (1)</p> <p>Invitation letter marketed and evaluated to encourage uptake of classes (1)</p>	<p>Specific interventions for ethnic minority groups</p> <p>Asian relative/friend encouraged to attend (8)</p> <p>Coronary heart disease leaflets in Asian languages (5)</p> <p>Audiotapes of education sessions (3)</p> <p>Asian-speaking nurses for home visits (5), education and exercise (3)</p> <p>Involvement of Asian support groups (3)</p> <p>Community elders from voluntary sector supporting rehabilitation (3)</p> <p>Asian education programme (3)</p> <p>Asian patient buddy system (2)</p> <p>Provision of culturally sensitive classes (2)</p> <p>Regular Asian focus groups to assess need (1)</p> <p>Separate exercise class for Asian women (1)</p> <p>Encouragement to wear traditional dress (1)</p>
<p>Specific interventions for women</p> <p>Women patients 'buddy' system (15)</p> <p>Individualised exercise plans (14)</p> <p>Separate classes for women (6)</p> <p>Encouragement of husband or friend to attend (6)</p> <p>Choice of community or hospital-site sessions (3)</p> <p>Female volunteer befriending service and help-line (3)</p> <p>Focus groups to assess women's needs (2)</p> <p>Smaller exercise groups for women (1)</p> <p>Health benefits for women explained (1)</p> <p>Women's changing facilities (1)</p> <p>Female-only staff to facilitate rehabilitation sessions (1)</p>	<p>Specific interventions for CABG/PTCA</p> <p>Surgical tertiary centre referral system (13)</p> <p>Specific revascularisation programme led by a revascularisation rehabilitation nurse (12)</p> <p>Strong recommendation by surgeon/consultant (2)</p> <p>Theatre list referral system (1)</p> <p>Buddy system (1)</p> <p>Preangiogram talk about rehabilitation (1)</p> <p>Video about cardiac rehabilitation (1)</p>
<p>Specific interventions for age > 65 years</p> <p>Separate and smaller classes for the elderly/frail (6)</p> <p>Flexible start date if patient slow to recover (4)</p> <p>Elderly patients' buddy system (3)</p> <p>Relative /spouse encouraged to attend (3)</p> <p>Lower impact exercise class (3)</p> <p>Choice of sessions offered (day and times) (3)</p> <p>Focus groups to assess elderly needs (2)</p> <p>Elderly volunteer befriending service and help-line (2)</p> <p>One-to-one exercise supervision (1)</p> <p>Elderly education sessions (1)</p> <p>Audiotapes of education sessions (1)</p>	<p>Specific interventions for angina</p> <p>Specific angina education sessions (5)</p> <p>No exclusion to attend (5)</p> <p>Direct referral from rapid-access chest pain clinic (2)</p> <p>Referral while awaiting CABG (1)</p> <p>Buddy system (2)</p> <p>Referral followed up by specialist angina nurse (1)</p>
	<p>Specific interventions for heart failure</p> <p>Specific heart failure programme (9)</p> <p>Community specialist heart failure nurse encourages attendance (5)</p> <p>No exclusion to classes (4)</p> <p>Low-impact exercise classes (2)</p> <p>Buddy system (1)</p> <p>Community-based programme (1)</p> <p>Audiotapes of health education provided (1)</p> <p>One-to-one exercise supervision (1)</p>

comprehensive picture, and more accurate data on referral and uptake.

Relative to post-myocardial infarction patients, older people and women tended to be less often referred and were less likely to join a programme. Data on ethnic minorities and those with diagnoses of angina and heart failure were too sparse to evaluate formally. However, the low numbers reported indicate that these groups are very unlikely to be referred or to join programmes.

Many different interventions are reported by services, suggesting high levels of awareness of the general problem of uptake. These interventions vary in complexity and cost; for those that are either complex or costly, more formal evaluation of their effects on uptake and adherence would be valuable. Examples of low-cost, sensible good practice (e.g. telephone call follow-ups) should be widely disseminated and would not require formal evaluation.

Chapter 5

Audit of cardiac rehabilitation in England: National Service Framework for Coronary Heart Disease recommendations

Objective

- Assessment of cardiac rehabilitation audit activity by survey of rehabilitation centres.

Background

Patient uptake of outpatient cardiac rehabilitation services is poor, particularly by under-represented groups including women, the elderly and ethnic minorities.^{25,33,36} Although guidelines on provision of services exist,^{2,4,87} audit of cardiac rehabilitation services has previously been piecemeal and not routinely undertaken and, where data exist, adherence to guidelines is poor.⁸⁸ In England, the NSF-CHD has recognised the benefits of comprehensive cardiac rehabilitation and the need for services to be extended.¹² It states that every hospital should ensure that more than 85% of patients discharged with a primary diagnosis of acute myocardial infarction or after coronary revascularisation are offered access to cardiac rehabilitation. This has implications for clinical governance and the need to audit cardiac rehabilitation services.

In view of the NSF stated objectives, the aim was to ascertain the level of cardiac rehabilitation audit activity in the south-west of England and areas with high ethnic minority populations in London and the midlands.

Methods

Cardiac rehabilitation centres in the south-west of England, London and the Midlands were contacted by telephone and asked to supply a report on their most recent audit. Information on any special efforts to improve attendance by specific patient groups (e.g. women, the elderly and ethnic minorities) was also requested. Centres reporting no available data were asked to provide reasons for not undertaking audit. Centres with audit data or a report available but that did not

submit a copy were contacted a second time by telephone and subsequently by letter. The medical director of the NHS trust was then contacted, asking the hospital trust to follow-up the request.

Results

Response rate

From January to July 2002, 51/57 (89%) of cardiac rehabilitation centres that were approached were successfully contacted. Twenty-six centres (46%) responded to the first telephone request. Further contact by telephone and letter led to replies from one (2%) and eight centres (14%), respectively. Finally, after written communication with medical directors, replies were received from a further 16 centres (28%). Audit data were received from 24 (42%) centres, nine (16%) reported that an audit had been undertaken but did not send it, and 18 (32%) stated that no audit had ever been undertaken. Two centres supplied their audit as anonymous individual patient data and one centre was only able to provide an audit report limited to a single ethnic group.

Audit methods

The means of data collection varied between centres. It was not possible to determine the method of data collection by 12 centres (50%). Of those where this was clear, six (50%) relied on a 'paper system' with retrospective data extraction from patient notes and attendance registers, while six (50%) used regularly updated computerised databases. Commenting on the collection of data, respondents regarded paper systems as time-consuming, tedious and unreliable, while centres using computerised methods reported that frequently there was a lack of trained staff for data management.

The mean length of audit was 10.4 months (SD 2.8, range 4–12 months). Times for data collection also varied between centres. Mid-point dates were in 2002 (two hospitals), 2001 (ten

TABLE 8 Audit activity specified in NSF-CHD

Stated NSF-CHD recommendation	No. of centres collecting information (%) (n = 23)
No. (%) of patients discharged from hospital after coronary revascularisation or with a primary diagnosis of AMI	10 (43%)
Documentation of arrangements for cardiac rehabilitation in discharge communication to GP	0 (0%)
Information on gender of patients	20 (87%)
Information on age of patients	18 (78%)
Information on ethnic group of patients	16 (70%)
No. recruited to cardiac rehabilitation	21 (91%)
Outcome information: 1 year after discharge, regular physical activity of at least 30 min duration on average five times a week, not smoking, body mass index < 30 kg/m ²	2 (9%)

hospitals), 2000 (eight hospitals), 1999 (two hospitals) and 1998 (one hospital). One audit did not provide dates. The main reasons cited for not collecting audit data were: time constraints, lack of adequate resources and computing facilities, lack of appropriate personnel to input data, limited or no audit training, or lack of information technology support for the audit process.

National Service Framework

The number of centres collecting information as stated in the NSF-CHD for annual collection is presented in *Table 8*. The audit with data on a single ethnic group is not included.

Of importance is that data received were often not comparable. Regarding age, only six (26%) centres provided age information adequate for the assessment of attendance by age group. This was similarly the case with ethnicity, where only five (22%) provided information that permitted comparisons of cardiac rehabilitation uptake by ethnic groups. This information was more likely to be collected by centres in areas with high numbers of patients from ethnic minorities. Eleven out of 13 centres (85%) from areas with high ethnic minorities collected information on provision for specific ethnic minority groups, but in only four (31%) could this be used to assess some feature of uptake. In areas with relatively low numbers of patients from ethnic minorities limited information was reported by five out of 10 centres (50%), with only one centre collecting adequate information to assess differences in attendance rates (10%).

Of the 19 centres supplying relevant information, 12 (63%) provided rehabilitation for patients with myocardial infarction, coronary bypass surgery,

TABLE 9 Additional information included in audits

Additional information collected	No. of centres collecting information (%) (n = 23)
Patient reasons for non-attendance	12 (52%)
Patient clinical history and risk factors	6 (26%)
Secondary prevention outcomes	4 (17%)
Patient opinions and satisfaction	2 (9%)
Patient's home postcode	2 (9%)
Psychological morbidity	1 (4%)
Exercise outcomes	1 (4%)
Reasons for non-referral	1 (4%)
Referrals by consultant	1 (4%)

angioplasty and heart failure. Six (32%) were exclusively for myocardial infarction patients and one (5%) for surgical patients.

Audits also contained information not directly relevant to the objectives of the NSF. This is summarised in *Table 9*.

Numbers of patients per year

The annual baseline mean number of patients discharged alive from hospital and eligible for cardiac rehabilitation and the numbers of patients referred to, attending and completing cardiac rehabilitation are presented in *Table 10* for all centres and for those providing services to a high proportion of ethnic minorities.

The proportion of discharged patients attending rehabilitation was 35% (weighted by number of patients discharged, SD 12, range 14–54%) and of those referred or invited to cardiac rehabilitation attendance was 55% (weighted by number of patients invited, SD 12, range 35–80%). Seventy-

TABLE 10 Numbers and proportions of patients discharged alive, referred/invited, attending and completing cardiac rehabilitation per year

	Mean no. (SD) of patients (range) (no. of centres)	Proportion of discharged ^a (no. of centres)	Proportion of referred/invited ^a (no. of centres)	Proportion of attended ^a (no. of centres)
All centres				
Discharged patients	390 (182) (167–684) (n = 10)			
Referred/invited for cardiac rehabilitation	308 (223) (62–1066) (n = 18)	59% (n = 7)		
Attending cardiac rehabilitation	176 (110) (23–533) (n = 19)	35% (n = 8)	55% (n = 16)	
Completing cardiac rehabilitation	148 (53) (66–233) (n = 8)	32% (n = 3)	48% (n = 8)	77% (n = 7)
Centres providing service to a high proportion of ethnic minorities				
Discharged patients	398 (184) (167–620) (n = 6)			
Referred/invited for cardiac rehabilitation	334 (262) (62–1066) (n = 11)	60% (n = 5)		
Attending cardiac rehabilitation	189 (135) (23–533) (n = 11)	29% (n = 5)	57% (n = 10)	
Completing cardiac rehabilitation	137 (58) (66–233) (n = 6)	37% (n = 2)	48% (n = 6)	79% (n = 5)
^a For centres providing complete information.				

seven per cent of patients (weighted by number of patients attending, SD 13, range 57–91%) attending a programme subsequently completed it.

The proportion of patients discharged who completed a programme was 32% (weighted by number of patients discharged, SD 6, range 28–42%). However, this was based on information from only three centres.

In five centres providing a service to a high proportion of ethnic minorities the percentage of discharged patients referred was significantly lower than in three centres from other areas surveyed and which provided appropriate data (29% compared with 45%). Otherwise, the proportions of patients referred, attending and completing programmes were similar.

Measures reported to improve patient attendance at outpatient cardiac rehabilitation

Eight centres (35%) reported a variety of measures to improve attendance and these are summarised in *Table 11*. Three of these measures concentrated on the uptake of ethnic minorities, one on women patients, but none on the elderly. Regrettably, information evaluating the success of these measures was not available.

TABLE 11 Measures taken to improve attendance at cardiac rehabilitation

	No. of centres reporting measures to improve attendance (%)
Community, non-hospital-based programme	5 (22%)
Translator or interpreter	3 (13%)
Evening programme	2 (9%)
Community liaison or link worker	2 (9%)
Women-only programme	1 (4%)
Programme for specific ethnic group	1 (4%)
Programme on days appropriate to religious beliefs	1 (4%)
Satellite services in local hospitals	1 (4%)
Audio information for visually impaired	1 (4%)

Discussion

Clinical governance incorporates audit to ensure that clinical care is up to date and effective.⁸⁹ However, a commitment to the accuracy, appropriateness, completeness and analysis of

healthcare information is required if judgements about clinical quality are to be made and the impact of clinical governance is to be assessed.⁹⁰

Major barriers to clinical audit are lack of resources, lack of expertise or support, and organisational difficulties.⁹¹ This survey highlighted that a minority of centres was able to provide information on outpatient cardiac rehabilitation audit, with one-third of centres reporting that no audit was available. Some centres reported that audit had been conducted, but were not eager to disseminate the information outside the hospital. This may reflect the perceived disadvantages associated with clinical audit of diminished clinical ownership and hierarchical and territorial suspicions.⁹¹ Although the medical directors of NHS trusts were contacted future studies should consider methods to improve sharing of audit information.

Nearly half of the audits provided some relevant information on clinical audit as specified in the NSF-CHD. However, information on potentially under-represented groups was limited. To some extent the style and content of audit reports probably reflect local interests and concerns relating to cardiac rehabilitation provision. Basic information on the initiating event in particular, and on referral, invitation, attendance and completion was collected in sporadic and non-standard ways. A few audit reports were comprehensive, with comparison of total numbers of discharged patients and patient attendance and completion of outpatient cardiac rehabilitation. To allow comparison of provision between centres and over time, a baseline figure of total initiating events is required, as well as information on invitation to, and completion of, the programme. Examples of clinical audit tools have been included in cardiac rehabilitation guidelines.^{2,4} However, with the exception of initiating event, these have been limited in their inclusion of information on potential sources of under-representation. A more recent resource considers age, gender and ethnicity,⁹² and is currently under evaluation.⁹³ Development and acceptance of a comprehensive, standard audit tool with flexibility regarding local issues would be helpful for use in future audits. It may be possible to merge this into a hospital critical care pathway and routinely collected Myocardial Infarction National Audit Project (MINAP)⁹⁴ data. If the targets laid down in the NSF-CHD are to be met and the health outcomes are to be successful then the challenge lies in the development of an effective and uncomplicated audit tool that can be applied nationally to serve all cardiac populations.

A difficulty identified in several audits and from centres unable to provide information was that patients may be referred to a programme from one or more hospitals or from one hospital to several different programmes. This complicates the audit of programmes in both urban and rural settings. In one city unable to provide audit information a group of hospitals reported the imminent introduction of a joint database.

Where available, audits of outpatient cardiac rehabilitation varied considerably in style and content. Some were thorough documents covering many aspects of audit, whereas other centres had been unable to prepare a formal document but were able to provide raw data. Some audits were prepared by staff trained in clinical audit, whereas others were by less experienced staff or were student projects. Other facilitating factors for audit include modern medical records systems, effective training, dedicated staff, protected time, structured programmes, and a shared dialogue between purchasers and providers.⁹¹

Only a minority of centres was able to provide complete information on numbers of patients referred (seven centres) and who attended cardiac rehabilitation (eight centres) in relation to numbers discharged. There was a suggestion that referral and invitation of patients were similar in centres providing services in areas with high proportions of ethnic minorities compared with centres in other areas. However, the proportion of patients attending a programme was lower in areas with high ethnic minority populations. Changes to services and interventions to improve uptake of cardiac rehabilitation by ethnic minority groups may be indicated.

A series of measures had been undertaken by centres to help patients to participate in outpatient cardiac rehabilitation. These ranged from holding classes in community settings and at times to suit patients, to the establishment of classes dedicated to women or ethnic groups. As interventions may be of interest to other centres, evaluation by controlled trials or within a reproducible audit framework would be valuable in determining their overall effectiveness in improving attendance at outpatient cardiac rehabilitation.

Conclusions

The findings from this more detailed survey of audit activity complement those obtained from the

national survey of cardiac rehabilitation services presented in Chapter 4. The authors had hoped to be able to find interventions specific to under-represented groups by focusing on services located in areas with relatively high proportions of black and ethnic minorities and with rather more aged populations (the south-west of England). However, the quality of audit, the reports and the data collected were insufficient to support robust interpretation of the performance of these services.

The findings highlight a national uncoordinated approach to audit data collection in England with large variations in methods and content despite the standards set out in the NSF and cardiac rehabilitation guidelines. The use of modern medical records systems, appropriate training for dedicated staff and dialogue between all contributors to services is suggested. Development of a national and policy-driven standardised

audit tool would facilitate the identification of patients by cardiac event and the following of all patients through the cardiac rehabilitation process.

Limited analysis of audit data suggests that uptake of cardiac rehabilitation is particularly low in areas with high proportions of ethnic minorities. Information on under-represented groups and local interests should be incorporated into audit data collection in a standardised way so that future care can be targeted to the needs of the local cardiac population.

Some cardiac rehabilitation programmes have attempted to improve attendance with measures appropriate for all patients or for specific groups. Evaluation and dissemination of information on effective and ineffective interventions may help other programmes to improve services and use resources appropriately.

Chapter 6

Uptake and adherence in a randomised controlled trial of cardiac rehabilitation after myocardial infarction

Objective

- To evaluate uptake and adherence using data from a recent multicentre RCT.⁹⁵

Introduction

In the UK provision of rehabilitation for patients following acute myocardial infarction is a requirement of the NHS-CHD¹² and comparable guidelines in Scotland and Wales.^{2,18} Before discharge all patients should be invited to participate in a multidisciplinary cardiac rehabilitation and secondary prevention programme. Some patient groups are not thought to benefit from the exercise component of cardiac rehabilitation after acute myocardial infarction. Patients with more severe cardiac illness and those with psychiatric conditions that may compromise safety are considered ineligible.⁹⁶ Pragmatically, patients with poor functional capacity, significant co-morbidity, frailty or confusion are not suitable for outpatient-delivered rehabilitation. Consequently, these factors may influence referral and uptake in clinical practice.

The uptake and adherence achieved in a clinical trial setting was examined because this should reflect the best that can be achieved in optimal routine clinical practice.⁹⁵ It would certainly be unlikely that NSF targets representing a higher level of uptake and adherence than that seen in a contemporary trial would be feasible. Where appropriate, data for all patients discharged after myocardial infarction were analysed. For issues relating to attendance only those patients allocated to cardiac rehabilitation were considered.

Methods

Patients were recruited in 18 typical acute general hospitals in England and Wales. The trial protocol planned for all potentially eligible myocardial infarction patients to be identified on confirmation of diagnosis. At discharge ineligible

patients (significant co-morbidity, etc.) were excluded under protocol guidelines of minimal exclusions and reasons were recorded, usually by a nominated coronary care unit nurse. Patients eligible for rehabilitation were advised of the trial in an introductory letter.

Each patient was visited by a research interviewer approximately 1 week after discharge. Patients were given full details of the trial and, after being asked for informed consent, answered the baseline structured interview. Following entry into the trial and central blind randomisation, the names of patients allocated to cardiac rehabilitation were given to rehabilitation teams for invitation, treatment and follow-up as normal practice for the programme.

There were two opportunities for patient selection: by hospital medical or nursing staff (before trial entry) according to criteria in protocol; or by cardiac rehabilitation staff (after randomisation). There were also three opportunities for refusal of the trial or rehabilitation by patients: when advised of the trial by hospital staff; after a full description of the trial and informed consent by the research interviewer; or when given the date, time and venue of their first rehabilitation appointment. Patients were interviewed after 1 year and asked about their experiences of cardiac rehabilitation.

Results

The collection of names of potentially eligible patients and recording of clinical summaries were not complete in all hospitals. Some progressively reduced the flow of forms of excluded patients. Consequently, analyses were undertaken both for all hospitals and for those hospitals in which record-keeping was thought to be nearly complete.

In total, 3264 potentially eligible patients were identified in the 18 hospitals. Of these, 1400 were in five hospitals with complete registration.

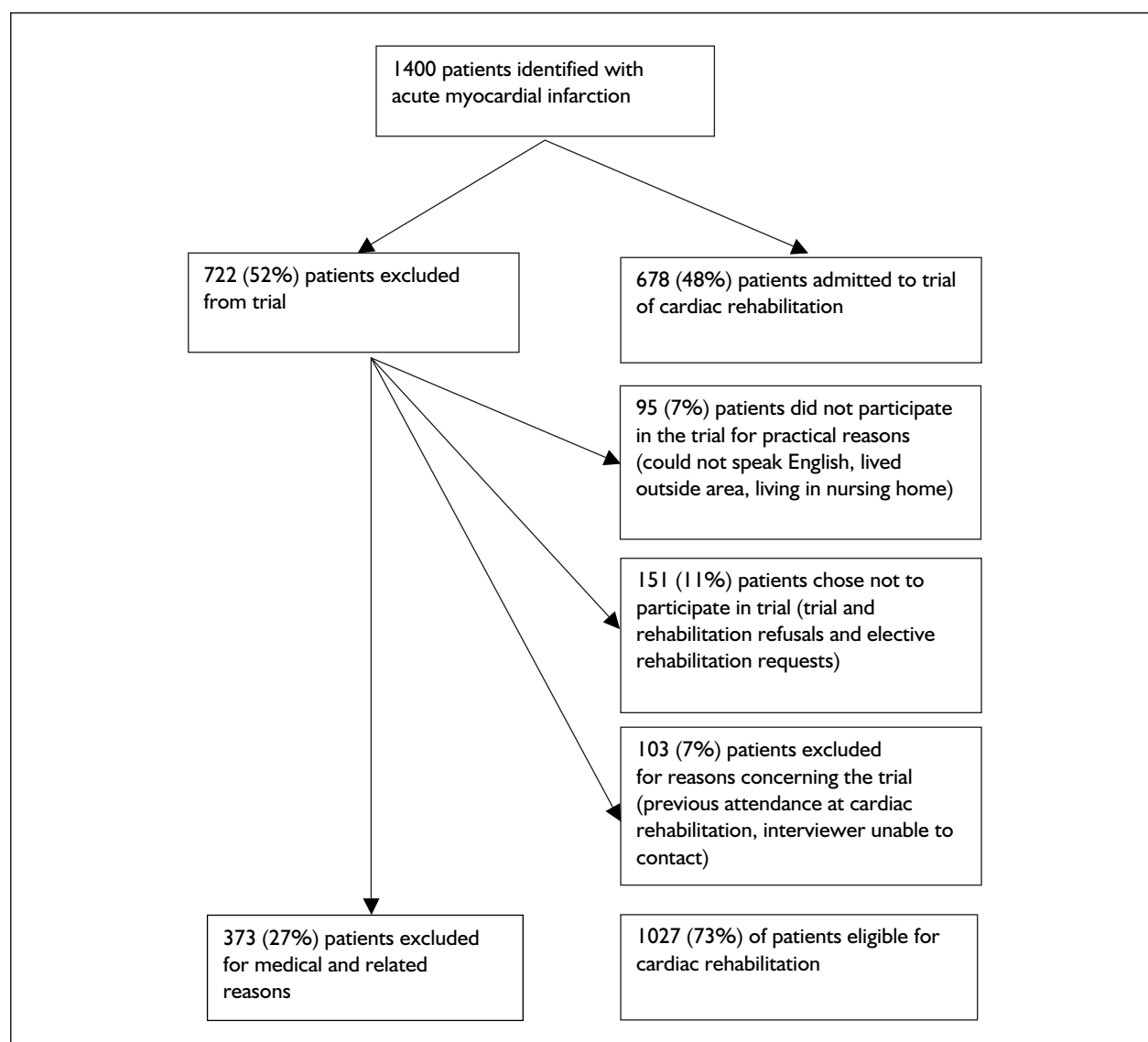


FIGURE 3 Exclusions from trial hospitals reporting complete myocardial infarction registration

Figure 3 shows reasons for exclusion from the trial and overall eligibility for cardiac rehabilitation in the hospitals with complete registration. Seventy-three per cent of patients had no medical reason (identified during hospital stay by medical or nursing staff) for not attending a programme of cardiac rehabilitation. Thus, nearly three-quarters of patients discharged within 28 days following myocardial infarction were deemed eligible for cardiac rehabilitation.

Follow-up interviews were completed for 959 patients randomised to rehabilitation at approximately 1 year, by when 75 patients had died. Attendance information for a further 91 patients was provided by rehabilitation coordinators.

Medical reasons for exclusion, identified during the hospital stay, are shown in Table 12. Some of these patients may have been eligible for rehabilitation at a later date or in a different hospital (patients awaiting surgery, transferred to another hospital, having extended hospital stay or being readmitted). Including these patients raises eligibility from 73 to 81%.

Patients excluded from rehabilitation for medical reasons tended to be older (mean age 71.9 years compared with 64.6 years for eligible patients, $p < 0.0001$) and were more likely to be female (36.5% versus 21.9% males excluded, $p < 0.0001$). Table 13 shows patient exclusion in males and females in different age groups. There was a trend for increasing exclusion in both men and women

TABLE 12 Reasons for exclusion in hospitals with complete patient registration

	No. of patients (%)
Admitted to trial	678 (48.4%)
Practical, personal and trial exclusion	349 (24.9%)
Medical exclusion:	
Significant co-morbidity	75 (5.4%)
Frail or confused	154 (11.0%)
Transferred to other hospital	75 (5.4%)
>28 days in hospital	13 (0.9%)
Readmitted within 28 days	16 (1.1%)
Awaiting surgery	5 (0.4%)
Uncooperative	7 (0.5%)
Other	28 (2.0%)
Total	1400

with age. In multivariate analysis the association between gender and exclusion was not significant after adjustment for age.

Excluded patients tended to have pre-existing cardiovascular disease (previous myocardial infarction or angina) or more severe presentation of the index myocardial infarction (Table 14). However, previous hypertension was not associated with eligibility.

In total, 2144 patients were entered into the trial. Of these, 1100 were allocated to cardiac rehabilitation. Attendance figures are shown in Table 15.

Not all patients allocated by the trial to rehabilitation were offered cardiac rehabilitation. At least 22% and possibly as many as 33% of patients considered eligible by medical or nursing staff at time of discharge were not offered rehabilitation by cardiac rehabilitation staff. Patients invited tended to be younger than those not invited (mean age 62.8 years compared with 68.1 years) with a clear trend for non-invitation in older age groups (Table 16).

There was a tendency for women to be overlooked more often than men (31% compared with 22%). In less elderly patients (under 70 years), 18% of women were overlooked compared with 13% of men. However, the trend was not significant in multivariate analysis.

At interview, patients who had been invited to cardiac rehabilitation ($n = 721$) estimated the number of classes that they had attended and, if appropriate, gave reasons for non-attendance or dropout. Overall, 78% of patients invited to rehabilitation attended at least one session. Of patients aged 65 years or more 72% attended at least one session compared with 82% of those younger than 65 ($p = 0.001$). These data provide support for the observation that older patients are less likely to attend cardiac rehabilitation than younger patients. There were no statistically significant differences in initial uptake between men and women (79% versus 74%).

TABLE 13 Medical exclusions by age and gender (1349 patients with age and gender known)

Age at MI (years)	Male exclusions (% potentially eligible)	Female exclusions (% potentially eligible)	All exclusions (% potentially eligible)
<45	14 (25%)	4 (44%)	18 (28%)
45-54	21 (13%)	2 (5%)	23 (12%)
55-64	38 (16%)	13 (19%)	51 (16%)
65-74	50 (19%)	34 (27%)	84 (21%)
75-84	53 (34%)	69 (47%)	122 (40%)
85+	18 (56%)	31 (67%)	49 (63%)
All ages	194 (21%)	153 (35%)	347 (26%)

TABLE 14 Medical exclusions by previous cardiovascular disease and more severe sequelae of myocardial infarction

	Eligible	Medical exclusion	<i>p</i>
MI previous to index event	16.50%	26.70%	$p < 0.0001$
Previous angina	30.50%	44.10%	$p < 0.0001$
Previous hypertension	31.70%	31.00%	$p = 0.441$
MI with left ventricular failure	29.10%	49.60%	$p < 0.0001$
MI with cardiogenic shock	1.60%	7.30%	$p < 0.0001$

TABLE 15 Patient attendance in trial rehabilitation groups

	No. of patients (%)
Not offered/did not attend	238 (21.6%)
Not known whether offered/did not attend	66 (6.0%)
Offered/did not attend	162 (14.7%)
Attended one class	45 (4.1%)
Attended two to four classes	57 (5.2%)
Attended five or more classes	454 (41.3%)
Attended but number not known	18 (1.6%)
Not known whether offered or attended	60 (5.5%)
Total	1100

TABLE 16 Non-invitation by age group

Age group (years)	Not invited
<45	7 (11.3%)
45-54	21 (12.2%)
55-64	50 (17.2%)
65-74	87 (22.9%)
75+	73 (37.2%)
Total	238

Patients with a history of cardiovascular disease before the index myocardial infarction were slightly less likely to attend rehabilitation: previous hypertension (27% versus 21%) and previous myocardial infarction (30% versus 22%), but these differences were not statistically significant.

If invited, patients who had suffered a more severe myocardial infarction (complicated with left ventricular failure or cardiogenic shock) were as likely to attend as those without complications. Seventy-seven per cent of patients with left

ventricular failure attended compared with 78% of those without. For cardiogenic shock the numbers are small, but of 12 affected patients, 11 attended rehabilitation (92%) compared with 78% of those without.

Having attended one class, 79% of patients attended five or more sessions. Women were slightly less likely than men to attend five or more sessions (75% versus 80%), although this was not statistically significant.

Reasons reported for not attending or attending fewer than five sessions are shown in *Table 17*.

The main reasons given by patients at the 1-year follow up interview for non-attendance were lack of interest and perceived illness. However, 34% reported reasons for non-attendance or dropping out that might have been avoided with appropriate management. These included transport difficulties, returned to work, holidays, other appointments, administrative failure, dissatisfaction with course, dependent relative, considered unnecessary by department, attended other course and taking part in another trial.

Discussion

This analysis showed that some cardiac rehabilitation programmes used selection. This may reflect local provision issues or the lesser importance assigned to rehabilitation of patients following acute myocardial infarction compared with cardiac surgery. Although the analysis of reasons for exclusion is based on 1400 patients from five hospitals, a less representative

TABLE 17 Reasons for non-attendance or attendance at fewer than five sessions in patients offered cardiac rehabilitation

Reason for non-attendance	No. of patients (%)
Not interested or lost interest	71 (23.6%)
Too ill	62 (20.6%)
Transport difficulties	43 (14.3%)
Returned to work	18 (6.0%)
Holiday or other appointments	15 (5.0%)
Recommended not to by doctor or rehabilitation staff	13 (4.3%)
Rehabilitation department administrative failure	9 (3.0%)
Dissatisfaction with course (age group, male/female, content)	6 (2.0%)
Taken ill at rehabilitation class	6 (2.0%)
Looking after dependent relative	6 (2.0%)
Rehabilitation staff thought unnecessary (fit enough)	3 (1.0%)
Attending another rehabilitation course	2 (0.7%)
On another trial	1 (0.3%)
Not known	46 (15.3%)
Total	301

sample of hospitals than the 18 trial hospitals, a similar pattern is observed in the whole sample.

It is not possible to differentiate trial refusals from cardiac rehabilitation refusals. By refusing to participate in the trial, patients may be seeking cardiac rehabilitation or may be turning it down. However, in an audit of rehabilitation services both these patient groups must be considered as eligible. Patients who were excluded from the trial for methodological (trial) reasons may have been eligible and contactable if given a definite invitation while in hospital. Patients excluded for the practical reason of living outside the area may have been eligible for a cardiac rehabilitation programme local to their home. Indeed, it is possible that these patients received rehabilitation elsewhere. At the time there were no specific interventions to facilitate uptake by patients who spoke no English, in the study hospitals (specific programmes for non-English-speaking patients may have been introduced more recently). It is unlikely that they would have received rehabilitation elsewhere.

The reasons reported by patients for non-attendance at and for early dropout from a cardiac

rehabilitation programme suggest that uptake may be improved by addressing issues of motivation and the perceived relevance of rehabilitation to future well-being, minor co-morbidities or perceived illness, site and timing of sessions, transport and arrangement of care for dependants.

Conclusions

Medical and nursing staff identified 73–81% of patients discharged from hospital after acute myocardial infarction as being eligible for cardiac rehabilitation. Excluded patients tended to be older, were more likely to have suffered from angina or had a previous myocardial infarction and showed more severe presentation of cardiovascular disease. Reduced invitation and attendance of women was largely explained by their greater age at myocardial infarction. The experiences of patients invited to cardiac rehabilitation suggest that uptake may be improved by addressing issues of motivation and the perceived relevance of rehabilitation to future well-being, co-morbidities, site and time of sessions, transport and arrangement of care for dependants.

Chapter 7

Systematic review of interventions to improve uptake, adherence and professional compliance with cardiac rehabilitation

Chapters 7–10 present the methods and findings for a series of related systematic reviews. The issue of improving uptake was split into three major questions: how can recruitment to cardiac rehabilitation be improved; how can patients' adherence to cardiac rehabilitation and maintenance of lifestyle changes be improved; and, how can professionals be encouraged to comply with guidelines and good practice? The sources of data to answer these questions may overlap, as researchers will not necessarily have conceived their questions in the same form as the present group has. With awareness of this, it was ensured that each pair of reviewers dealing with a specific question read source material with a view to identifying potential relevance to other questions.

Definitions

- **Uptake:** patients attending any outpatient cardiac rehabilitation (i.e. successful recruitment).
- **Adherence:** patients attending all or majority of outpatient programme, or maintaining lifestyle changes associated with cardiac rehabilitation.
- **Professional compliance:** healthcare professionals complying with guidelines or good practice regarding invitation and support of patients' cardiac rehabilitation.

Objective

- How effective are different methods for improving uptake, adherence or professional compliance with cardiac rehabilitation?

Methods

A systematic review of interventions to increase uptake, patient adherence and professional compliance with cardiac rehabilitation is described. This was supported by members of the

Cochrane Heart Group (KR, MB) who assisted with designing search strategies and identifying reports.

Data sources

A general search strategy was designed to identify all studies relating to the uptake, adherence or compliance with cardiac rehabilitation services. The choice of sources was intended to find both published and unpublished studies (grey literature). Details of terms used in the search are given in Appendix 4. The terms used were those for 'heart disease' together with terms for 'cardiac rehabilitation'. A broad approach to rehabilitation terms was chosen to identify not only formal cardiac rehabilitation programmes but also non-traditional programmes that could contribute to cardiac rehabilitation. Studies identified were further searched for terms relating to uptake, adherence, compliance and costs. Study methodology terms were not included, as the intention was to find all studies irrespective of methodology used. No language restrictions were applied.

The following databases were searched from inception (as appropriate) to June 2001:

- MEDLINE on Ovid
- EMBASE on Ovid
- the Cochrane Library (2001 Issue 2). This includes the Cochrane Controlled Trials Register, Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews, Database of Reviews of Effectiveness (DARE), HTA Database and NHS Economic Evaluation Database
- CINAHL on Ovid
- PsycINFO on BIDS Silverplatter WebSPIRS
- ISI Web of Science and ISI Proceedings
- ECONLIT on Silverplatter WebSPIRS
- British Library Inside
- SIGLE (System for Information on Grey Literature in Europe)
- HMIC (Health Management Information Consortium database)

- COPAC (joint catalogue of CURL – the Consortium of University Research Libraries)
- National Research Register.

Additional searching of literature:

- The *Journal of Cardiopulmonary Rehabilitation*, 1990–2001, was handsearched.
- *Coronary Health Care*, 1997–2001, was handsearched.
- Abstracts from conference proceedings were handsearched:
 - American Association of Cardiovascular and Pulmonary Rehabilitation (AACVPR)
 - American College of Cardiology (ACC)
 - British Cardiac Society (BCS)
 - British Association for Cardiac Rehabilitation (BACR)
 - European Society of Cardiology (ESC)
 - International Network of Agencies for Health Technology Assessment (INAHTA)
 - Society for Social Medicine (SSM)
 - World Congress of Cardiology (WCC).
- The reference lists of relevant studies and reviews were scanned.
- Expert opinion was sought.

Study selection

Preliminary literature searches suggested that only a small number of RCTs would be found and that non-randomised studies would form an important part of the review. Consequently, all studies reporting evaluations of interventions were considered. A total of 3261 references was identified in the searches, and the title and abstract of each article were examined by at least one reviewer. Articles were only rejected if the reviewer could determine from the title and abstract that the article was not a report of an intervention. When a paper could not be rejected with certainty, the full text of the article was obtained for further evaluation. A total of 957 references was identified as potentially relevant and acquired for more detailed consideration.

There was concern about publication bias and therefore special efforts were made to identify studies that might report negative findings by searching the grey literature, and handsearching abstracts of scientific meetings. Many of the identified interventions were found in the grey literature, which tends to include studies reporting lower effectiveness than those published in journals.⁹⁷ No attempt was made to contact authors of studies as a lower response rate was anticipated for supplementary information from authors of conference abstracts and theses

compared with authors of published papers, which would tend to bias the information towards studies with more favourable outcomes.

After the discarding of purely descriptive reports two reviewers (from AB, KR, SE, MB, IG, FT and RW) assessed articles using a three-question inclusion/exclusion form (Appendix 5). A third reviewer (SE or KR) resolved disagreements over inclusion/exclusion.

Reports were included for data extraction if the following criteria were met:

- evaluation of intervention to increase uptake, patient adherence or professional compliance to cardiac rehabilitation
- patients with myocardial infarction, CABG or PTCA, with heart failure or angina, or coronary heart disease
- outcomes relevant to the reviews, specifically numbers attending and patient adherence to cardiac rehabilitation and its exercise, education and lifestyle components.

Data extraction

Once the decision had been made to include studies in the review two reviewers independently abstracted the relevant data (data extraction form in Appendix 6). Data extracted included details of patients, intervention, study type, quality and results. No attempt was made to contact authors for additional information.

The quality of non-randomised studies was recorded in accordance with recent reviews, specifically information relating to selection bias, power and analysis.⁹⁸ No formal scale was used to categorise quality, but features of individual studies are presented in the results sections. The method of group allocation, sample size, comparison of group characteristics at baseline and concomitant service changes independent of the intervention are used as the basis for quality assessment.

Analysis

The systematic review takes the form of three qualitative overviews. No attempt was made to pool study results as the number of trials was small and the study designs and interventions varied. Studies are grouped by quality of evidence. The best evidence comes from RCTs while non-randomised and before-and-after study designs provide less reliable evidence.^{99,100} Studies were characterised by type and size, participants, intervention, comparison group, principal and other outcomes, and authors' conclusions.

Chapter 8

Systematic review of interventions to improve uptake of cardiac rehabilitation

Background

Barriers to attendance at outpatient cardiac rehabilitation have been identified, but the effectiveness of interventions to improve uptake has not been assessed by systematic review. Such a review is needed to identify appropriate methods for increasing patient use of services and to suggest areas meriting further research. For the review uptake was defined as any patient attendance at outpatient cardiac rehabilitation (i.e. successful recruitment).

Results

Studies included in review of interventions to improve uptake of cardiac rehabilitation

The flow of articles through the review process is shown in Appendix 7 in accordance with Quality of Reporting of Meta-analyses (QUOROM).¹⁰¹ Twenty-seven articles reporting 22 studies were identified as relevant to the review of methods to improve uptake of cardiac rehabilitation and were formally included in the review. Reading by two reviewers (AB and RW) found eight studies reporting evaluation of an intervention relating to uptake by an appropriate patient group and with a relevant outcome.

A brief summary of each study is shown in *Table 18*, with detailed descriptions presented in Appendix 8. More than one report was identified from the trials of Jolly and colleagues¹⁰²⁻¹⁰⁴ and Wyer and colleagues.^{105,106} The reference providing the main source of information for the systematic review is cited in the tables and text.

Studies excluded from review of interventions to improve uptake of cardiac rehabilitation

Sixteen papers describing 14 studies selected for data extraction but not included in the review are summarised in Appendix 9. One paper reporting a before-and-after study of an intervention to

improve uptake of cardiac rehabilitation by CABG patients was published after June 2001.¹¹² Eight studies had either no outcome data¹¹³⁻¹¹⁹ or no comparison group,¹²⁰ or the study was retrospective in design.¹²¹ In five studies the outcomes were referral^{122,123} or commitment to participate,¹²⁴ or the study was related to secondary prevention.¹²⁵⁻¹²⁷

Methodological qualities of studies included in review of interventions to improve uptake of cardiac rehabilitation

Six studies reported interventions with a specific objective of increasing uptake of outpatient cardiac rehabilitation.^{41,82,104,106,110,111} Two papers described interventions to improve uptake of community or voluntary services (cardiac or heart clubs) after discharge from inpatient cardiac rehabilitation.^{108,109} All studies were of patients with myocardial infarction, and in two studies patients with angina¹⁰⁴ and following cardiac surgery¹¹⁰ were included.

Three of the eight studies were RCTs, with randomisation on an individual basis in two^{106,108} and by general practice in one.¹⁰⁴ Methods of randomisation and blind outcome assessment were clearly described for two of the three RCTs^{104,106} and intervention groups were similar at baseline in all three trials.

Five articles reported non-randomised comparisons.^{41,82,109,110,111} In one study a district providing an intervention was compared with a district with no intervention.⁸² The districts had populations with similar demographics that were served by the same general hospital. The other four papers reported uptake of cardiac rehabilitation in periods before and after implementation of an intervention.^{41,109,110,111} Baseline characteristics of groups were not reported in these studies. One before-and-after study reported percentage uptake but did not provide patient numbers or tests of statistical significance.¹¹⁰

TABLE 18 Studies evaluating interventions to improve uptake of cardiac rehabilitation

Authors, year and country	Study type and patients	Intervention	Findings relevant to uptake	Comments
RCTs				
Wyer <i>et al.</i> , 2001 ¹⁰⁶ UK	RCT, 87 MI patients	Letters based on the theory of planned behaviour (Ajzen & Madden) ¹⁰⁷ designed to increase attendance at CR	Uptake of outpatient CR was 86% in the intervention group and 57% in the control group ($p < 0.0025$)	Intervention open to alternative interpretation; letters conveying a 'fear' message
Hillebrand <i>et al.</i> , 1995 ¹⁰⁸ Germany	RCT, 94 MI patients	Following inpatient CR patients had four telephone and at home conversations with social worker over a 6-month period	57% of patients who received the intervention attended a cardiac group compared with 27% of controls ($p < 0.005$)	Outcome is cardiac group attendance after inpatient CR
Jolly <i>et al.</i> , 1999 ¹⁰⁴ UK	Cluster RCT, 67 general practices, 597 MI and angina patients	Liaison nurse encourages patients to see practice nurse after discharge and supports practice nurses. Patient-held record card to prompt and guide follow-up	42% of patients in the intervention group attended at least one outpatient CR session compared with 24% of controls ($p < 0.001$)	Multifaceted intervention. Management of patients in control practices not explicit
Non-randomised studies				
Osika, 2001 ⁸² UK	Comparison of two districts with different provision, 175 MI patients	Weekly home visits by trained lay volunteers and accompaniment to first CR session	In the district with lay volunteer visiting 71% of patients attended a first appointment at outpatient CR compared with 47% in the control district ($p = 0.02$)	Intensity of lay volunteer visiting comparable with typical CR
Krasemann & Busch, 1988 ¹⁰⁹ Germany	200 MI patients attending in different periods	After completion of inpatient CR pamphlet given with information designed to motivate patients to join an outpatient heart group	66% of patients who received the intervention attended a heart group compared with 31% in the control group ($p < 0.001$)	No baseline group comparisons
Mosca <i>et al.</i> , 1998 ⁴¹ USA	Before-and-after study, 199 MI patients	Prompt for outpatient CR in discharge critical care pathway	Critical care pathway associated with a non-significant increase in outpatient CR participation (OR 1.9, 95% CI 0.6 to 5.5). ^a	No baseline group comparisons
Imich, 1997 ¹¹⁰ UK	Before-and-after study, MI and cardiac surgery, patient number not reported	Nurse support, education and counselling in the postdischarge, preoutpatient CR period	Attendance at outpatient CR by invited patients increased from 55% before to 75% after instigation of the programme	Patient numbers not reported, so not possible to assess statistical significance
Scott <i>et al.</i> , 2000 ¹¹¹ Australia	Before and after study, 649 MI patients	Dissemination of clinical guidelines to hospital staff and GPs. Feedback on clinical indicators	After intervention outpatient CR utilisation increased from 24% to 54% ($p = 0.003$)	Baseline period corresponds to CR programme start-up
^a Lower 95% CI estimated.				

Themes identified from the review of interventions to improve uptake of cardiac rehabilitation

The interventions identified in the systematic review can be grouped into four themes: healthcare professional-led interventions at the patient level, trained lay volunteers, coordination of postdischarge care at the service level, and written motivational communications.

Healthcare professional-led interventions at the patient level

Three studies were identified but none satisfactorily assessed the value of patient contact with healthcare professionals in improving cardiac rehabilitation uptake.^{104,108,110} In the RCT of Hillebrand and colleagues¹⁰⁸ attendance at a cardiac group after inpatient rehabilitation was significantly increased in myocardial infarction patients who received regular contact with a social worker. The social worker–patient contacts at times relevant to improvements in uptake were a visit in hospital and a telephone call 4 weeks after discharge. The authors considered this to be a motivational intervention. In the before-and-after study of Imich¹¹⁰ postdischarge at-home nursing support for myocardial infarction and cardiac surgery patients was associated with improvements in attendance at outpatient cardiac rehabilitation. However, little information relating to study quality and conduct was reported. In the nursing intervention reported by Jolly and colleagues,¹⁰⁴ although patients saw a liaison nurse in hospital before discharge the intervention was aimed mainly at professional organisation of care and is discussed in that section.

Trained lay volunteers

One study looked at an intervention with trained lay volunteers.⁸² In the thesis, Osika⁸² describes increased cardiac rehabilitation uptake associated with an intervention by trained lay volunteers. The study compared myocardial infarction patients in two districts with similar populations served by the same general hospital. In one district patients were offered the assistance of a patient who had previously attended cardiac rehabilitation. Patients in the district with the lay volunteer intervention were significantly more likely to attend the first session of the outpatient cardiac rehabilitation programme. In the absence of randomisation the author attempted to validate the method by reporting similarities in demographics and service access between groups.

Coordination of referral and postdischarge care at the service level

Interventions aimed at increasing uptake of outpatient cardiac rehabilitation by improving the coordination of postdischarge care were reported in three studies.^{41,104,111} Jolly and colleagues¹⁰⁴ reported a cluster RCT of coordination of care between hospital and general practice by specialist cardiac liaison nurses for myocardial infarction and angina patients. Attendance at one or more cardiac rehabilitation sessions was significantly increased in the intervention group. The intervention consisted of three main elements: liaison nurse encouragement for patient to see practice nurse, liaison nurse support for practice nurses, and prompts and guidance for patients by means of a personal record card. The study design does not allow the effect of components to be assessed individually. Mosca and colleagues⁴¹ compared patient participation before and after the introduction of a prompt for cardiac rehabilitation in a discharge critical care pathway. An improvement in participation in outpatient cardiac rehabilitation was observed, but this was not statistically significant. Group characteristics were not reported and other factors may have influenced levels of participation. In the study by Scott and colleagues,¹¹¹ patients admitted to hospital in three periods were compared. These were before, during and after the dissemination of clinical guidelines and feedback of clinical indicators to health professionals. The cardiac rehabilitation programme was operational during the implementation period and this was used as the baseline period for evaluation. A steady increase in utilisation of the outpatient cardiac rehabilitation service was observed during the implementation period and the authors attribute this to the intervention. However, no comparisons of patient characteristics were available for the relevant periods and, although the authors report that the new cardiac rehabilitation service was fully operational, an increase in uptake might be expected with a new service.

Motivational communications

One study showed significantly increased outpatient cardiac rehabilitation uptake after motivational letters¹⁰⁶ and two showed improved attendance at an outpatient heart group after motivational pamphlets¹⁰⁹ or conversations.¹⁰⁸ In the RCT of Wyer and colleagues,¹⁰⁶ motivational letters were sent to patients at 3 days and 3 weeks postmyocardial infarction. The letters were based on Ajzen and Madden's theory of planned behaviour¹⁰⁷ and designed to influence acceptance and attendance, although the authors noted that

the intervention many have been interpreted as a fear message. Krasemann and Busch¹⁰⁹ described a before-and-after study in which the intervention group received a pamphlet with motivational information about outpatient heart groups as a continuation of inpatient cardiac rehabilitation. Patients in both intervention and comparison groups received the addresses of local outpatient heart groups. The patients receiving the motivational pamphlet were more likely to attend the heart group, but no comparison of baseline characteristics of the patient groups was reported. The RCT of Hillebrand and colleagues¹⁰⁸ evaluated regular contact between a social worker and patients starting at the end of an inpatient cardiac rehabilitation programme. A motivating conversation pre-discharge and a telephone call after 4 weeks were associated with improved attendance at an outpatient heart group.

Another before-and-after study of an intervention to improve uptake of cardiac rehabilitation was published outside the review time-frame.¹¹² The intervention comprised a telephone communication about the benefits of cardiac rehabilitation plus assistance in the referral process. The authors reported an increase in enrolment, but the significance of this intervention is not clear, as other between-group comparisons were not described.

Resource implications of interventions to improve uptake of cardiac rehabilitation

Information provided on resource use associated with effective interventions from studies of reasonable quality is summarised in *Table 19*. The interventions can be summarised into three categories: home visits by trained lay volunteers, coordination of referral and postdischarge care by paid liaison nursing staff; and motivational communication letters or pamphlets distributed by paid staff.

Studies provided limited information on the resource inputs required. None provided information on the costs associated with these resource inputs. It was unclear from the information available whether interventions can be implemented by existing staff or require employment of extra staff and, if so, how many. Osika⁸² does not specify the number of trained lay volunteers per patient population required to carry out home visits in order to encourage patients' attendance for cardiac rehabilitation. The main cost incurred by the health service is that associated with the one-off training programme

provided by the hospital for the lay volunteers. A cardiac rehabilitation coordinator, a counsellor, a resuscitation officer and a safety officer conducted the training, which comprised seven 5-hour sessions. The specific time input of each staff type, however, was not clearly specified, nor was it clear how many lay volunteers were trained over this period. Lay volunteers were reimbursed mileage costs to attend for training and home visits, but these were not quantified.

Similarly, the staff implications of liaison nurse coordination of referral and postdischarge care were unclear. The intervention evaluated by Jolly and colleagues¹⁰⁴ comprised three cardiac liaison nurses who coordinated the referral and postdischarge care of 277 patients over 18 months. This suggests that one nurse could be responsible for coordinating the referral and postdischarge care of 62 patients per annum. It is understood that these liaison nurses were new appointments. Although mentioned in the study, transport costs incurred by the liaison nurse visiting practices and by the practice nurses attending training and support groups were not quantified, nor was the resource input or cost of training the liaison and practice nurses.

The use of motivational letters and pamphlets may require some initial preparation and printing, but at little additional resource input to the standard programme invitation, as these are likely to replace existing letters. Motivational telephone conversations and home visits by social workers will require staff time and transport costs, but these were not quantified in the study by Hillebrand and colleagues.¹⁰⁸

Further interventions that may improve uptake of cardiac rehabilitation suggested in the literature

The literature review identified a number of suggested interventions for improving uptake of cardiac rehabilitation. Although these potential interventions were not evaluated, the studies provided some evidence to suggest methods meriting further investigation. Examples of interventions excluded from the review at both formal extraction and the earlier inclusion stage, but with possible value in improving uptake, are summarised thematically in *Table 20*.

Discussion

Few studies aimed at improving uptake of outpatient cardiac rehabilitation were found. The

TABLE 19 Resource implications of interventions to improve uptake of cardiac rehabilitation (only considering period of intervention relating to improving uptake)

	Staff	Equipment	Consumables	Notes
Lay volunteers				
Home visits by trained lay volunteers and accompaniment to first CR session (Osika, 2001 ⁸²)	Multidisciplinary team providing 35 hours training per group of volunteers		Car mileage for seven local visits per patient, training at hospital	Considerable time demands on volunteers
Coordination of referral and postdischarge care				
Liaison nurse encouragement to see practice nurse. Support for practice nurses. Patient-held record card. (Jolly <i>et al.</i> , 1999 ¹⁰⁴)	Three cardiac liaison nurses visit both patients and practice nurses		Telephone calls; training for cardiac liaison nurses and practice nurses; car mileage allowance for training and support meetings	The study employed three nurses managing the care of 277 patients in 18 months
Motivational communication				
Telephone and at-home conversations with social worker (Hillebrand <i>et al.</i> , 1995 ¹⁰⁸)	Social worker visits patients		Telephone calls; car mileage for one local visit per patient	
Motivational letters designed to increase attendance (Wyer <i>et al.</i> , 2001 ¹⁰⁶)	(Support staff; minimal revision of normal practice)		Letters and postage	Letters substitute for existing invitations
Pamphlet with information designed to motivate patients to join outpatient heart groups (Krasemann & Busch, 1988 ¹⁰⁹)	(Support staff; minimal revision of normal practice)		Pamphlets	

source of studies was diverse with five papers published in peer-reviewed journals, two as theses (the paper by Wyer and colleagues¹⁰⁶ was published after June 2001 but had previously been written as a thesis) and one as a conference abstract. The systematic review identified studies of four types of intervention aimed towards improving uptake of outpatient cardiac rehabilitation and heart groups: written or aural motivational communications, healthcare professional-led interventions at the patient level, coordination of referral and postdischarge care at the service level, and lay volunteers.

The evidence for benefits from motivational communications was reasonably good, with improvements in uptake of outpatient cardiac rehabilitation and heart groups shown in two randomised trials^{106,108} and one before-and-after study.¹⁰⁹ Methods of communication used were written letters¹⁰⁶ or pamphlets,¹⁰⁹ or conversation with a health professional.¹⁰⁸

No conclusions can be drawn on the effectiveness of an intensive home-based nurse-led approach in promoting outpatient cardiac rehabilitation uptake, owing to the limited information in the one report looking at this type of intervention.¹¹⁰

A multifaceted approach to the coordination of transfer of care from hospital to general practice including patient self-management was effective in improving cardiac rehabilitation uptake in a randomised trial.¹⁰⁴ Particular aspects of the intervention were not evaluated separately, and it is not possible to compare the relative importance of inpatient nurse contact, professional support of practice nurses and self-empowerment of patients with record cards. Issues relating to study quality limit further support from two non-randomised trials.^{41,111}

Regular support and practical assistance from lay volunteers was effective in improving uptake of outpatient cardiac rehabilitation in a non-

TABLE 20 Further interventions that may improve uptake of cardiac rehabilitation suggested in the literature

Authors, date	Intervention	Description of report
Non-specific		
Suskin <i>et al.</i> , 2000 ¹²⁴	Physician endorsement	RCT. Outcome is intent to participate in CR
Caulin-Glaser & Schmeizel, 2000 ¹²³	Education of health professionals	Before-and-after study. Outcome is referral to CR
Kalayi <i>et al.</i> , 1999 ¹²²	Computerised referral pathway	Before-and-after study. Outcome is referral to CR
Cannistra <i>et al.</i> , 1995 ¹²⁸	Early social services involvement could improve social support and therefore uptake and adherence, by reducing home stress	Prospective study comparing black and white women
Beach <i>et al.</i> , 1996 ⁷¹	Self-care limitations assessment may help to assess, plan and facilitate healthy perceptions and behaviour post-MI and promote CR	Longitudinal interviews
Tack & Gilliss, 1990 ¹²⁹	Early information and follow-up can improve recovery expectations, give support and promote healthy coping and CR uptake	Prospective, longitudinal interviews
Hershberger <i>et al.</i> , 1999 ¹³⁰	Assessment of patient personality type could give a better indicator of compliance, uptake and adherence, and allow professionals to target those most in need	Retrospective study
Alternative methods of provision		
DeBusk <i>et al.</i> , 1985 ¹³¹	Home-based rehabilitation with ECG monitoring	RCT. Comparison of methods of delivery
Lewin <i>et al.</i> , 1992 ¹³²	Home-based rehabilitation	RCT. Effectiveness
Shaw, 1999 ¹³³	Physiologically monitored exercise and health education over the Internet	Review
Ades <i>et al.</i> , 2000 ¹³⁴	Home-based telephone-monitored CR	Trial: group allocation by distance from CR. Comparison of methods of delivery
Roitman <i>et al.</i> , 1998 ¹³⁵	Case-management and risk stratification	Review
Bethell & Mullee, 1990 ¹³⁶	Community-based CR: achieves high patient uptake	RCT. Effectiveness
Pell & Morrison, 1998 ⁵¹	Community-based CR: more patient friendly, improving uptake, particularly if run in socially deprived areas	Audit
Contractor <i>et al.</i> , 2000 ¹³⁷	Community-based CR: may increase accessibility of services	RCT. Effectiveness
Interventions for women		
Radley <i>et al.</i> , 1998 ⁵⁷	Implementing a one-off women-only education session in a CR programme may help to address gender-sensitive issues e.g. returning to sexual relations and housework	Retrospective study
Moore, 1996 ¹³⁸	Women-specific social support. Strategies to improve social support: better exercise variety and choice, and social opportunities during the programme	Focus-group interviews
Brezinka <i>et al.</i> , 1998 ¹³⁹	Women-specific counselling and smaller exercise sessions	Comparative semistructured interviews and questionnaires
Cannistra <i>et al.</i> , 1992 ²⁴	Provision of childcare/home-help for women attending outpatient CR	Prospective study comparing men and women
Toobert <i>et al.</i> , 1998 ¹⁴⁰	Women's retreat could increase uptake by improving emotional social support and relationships with CR staff	RCT. Effectiveness

randomised trial of demographically similar districts with different service provision.⁸²

All authors reported benefit for interventions to improve uptake of outpatient cardiac rehabilitation. This observation should be treated

with caution, as it is suggestive of positive publication bias.¹⁴¹ However, the wide-ranging search of grey literature including conference abstracts and theses should have identified studies considered of limited value for dissemination by authors and publishers. Although it is reasonable

to anticipate some improvement, it is not known how many similar or different interventions have been tried without success and, because unsuccessful, not reported. Similarly, equivocal results relating to cardiac rehabilitation uptake may not have been included in publications of studies with multiple findings. Three of the eight studies included in the review reported substantial material on other outcomes or observations, which would have merited full publication.

It would be inappropriate to draw firm conclusions relating costs to effectiveness of the interventions described in the above studies. Their resource use implications are not clearly described. However, order of magnitude costs may be inferred and these suggest a wide range in implied costs. Motivational interventions need not be costly, as they may replace the existing method of invitation. Individual home visits clearly add to the costs of a service otherwise provided in an outpatient setting. However, more visiting is becoming part of postdischarge care and cardiac rehabilitation. The study by Jolly and colleagues¹⁰⁴ was an evaluation of the introduction of liaison nurses (which would certainly be more costly) and may serve to define their role in supporting patients and other healthcare professionals and coordinating postdischarge care. Incorporation of motivational elements into home visiting may be appropriate, with little further implications for resources.

The literature contained many suggested interventions as facilitators of improved uptake of cardiac rehabilitation, but with no relevant evaluation. At the service level, appropriate education of health professionals and use of discharge care pathways and case management may improve referral and subsequent attendance at rehabilitation.^{122–124,135} In a similar vein to the motivational approach of Wyer and colleagues¹⁰⁶ the form of the recommendation to attend may be important, with endorsement by a physician of possible value.¹²⁴

Early support postdischarge by healthcare professionals may be appropriate in promoting cardiac rehabilitation and improving uptake.^{128,129} In addition, at an early stage the assessment of patients with regard to self-care limitations and personality type may be helpful in the targeting, planning and optimisation of postdischarge care, including rehabilitation.^{71,130}

Home-based programmes are frequently used in the period between hospital discharge and

attendance at outpatient cardiac rehabilitation.¹⁴² The home-based programme usually takes the form of a written booklet with an exercise schedule, psychosocial interventions and education relating to risk factor management appropriate for the early stages of recovery. This may serve to maintain patient motivation to lifestyle change in a period with limited contact with health professionals and hence promote later uptake of outpatient rehabilitation services. This merits further evaluation.

Home-based cardiac rehabilitation has also been promoted as a substitute for attendance at an outpatient programme.^{131,132} Trials have shown similar effectiveness in risk factor management and patient quality of life after home-based and outpatient methods. Appropriately delivered and assessed home-based cardiac rehabilitation may be a safe and effective form of provision for low- to moderate-risk patients. However, application of the home-based approach as a means to improve the reach of cardiac rehabilitation services should replicate the methods used in the trials of effectiveness and include frequent nurse visits, multidisciplinary input, psychological evaluation and thorough assessment. Patient acceptance of a home-based package does not equate to uptake of cardiac rehabilitation and the demonstration of comparability with an existing service may merely be observation of similar natural recovery in the patient groups. Consequently, home-based rehabilitation is not an appropriate substitute for outpatient services in patients with more severe disease or those with low motivation or lack of interest. It may have value in motivated low- to moderate-risk patients, particularly those living distant from current services. If there is a requirement for monitoring and assessment this could be undertaken using telemedicine approaches, including ECG monitoring and telephone contact during exercise sessions.^{131,133,134}

An alternative approach to cardiac rehabilitation provision outside the hospital setting is the use of facilities in the community.^{51,136,137} The service provided can be identical to the outpatient programme in content and multidisciplinary nature but avoid features associated with reduced attendance at hospital, including access difficulties. Similarly, factors limiting the uptake of home-based cardiac rehabilitation may be avoided, including reduced reliance on patient self-motivation. Cardiac rehabilitation in a community setting merits evaluation as a method for improving patient uptake and may be particularly valuable in socially deprived areas.⁵¹

The need to adapt cardiac rehabilitation services to suit female patients has been acknowledged by several authors.^{57,128,138–140} Many female patients have a higher level of psychosocial impairment and lower level of physical function than men, and therefore need gender-specific approaches to rehabilitation.¹³⁹ Suggested interventions to improve uptake include a women-only education session,⁵⁷ appropriate exercise choices,¹³⁸ specific counselling,¹³⁹ strategies to improve social support,¹³⁸ provision of childcare and home-help,²⁴ and a women's retreat.¹⁴⁰

There are numerous reports of reasons for non-attendance and under-representation in outpatient cardiac rehabilitation, so it is surprising that the systematic review of published literature identified so few evaluations of interventions to improve uptake. All those found were generic interventions applicable to all patients. The effectiveness of simple targeted interventions to facilitate attendance is not reported in the literature. No evaluations of interventions were reported to address the frequently cited patient reasons for non-attendance of perceived illness, transport difficulties, inconvenient timing or dependent relatives. Transport schemes, non-hospital settings, programmes for specific patient groups (single gender, elderly, ethnic minority groups) and provision of respite care for dependants have been suggested, but not evaluated as possible measures for improving service uptake. It is possible that

some programme coordinators have recognised deficits and the need for improvement in services and implemented changes: provision of services for a patient group previously not targeted for rehabilitation is likely to show initial improvement in uptake; but this is a Hawthorne effect which may not be sustained. However, the lack of evidence for benefit found for the use of critical care pathways and the limited evidence for other interventions demonstrate the requirement for good quality RCTs of new methods.

Conclusions

The systematic review of the literature suggests that approaches aimed at motivating patients may be of value in improving the uptake of cardiac rehabilitation. The content of invitation letters, pamphlets and home visits may be used as a vehicle for motivational messages. Some encouragement was also found for use of trained lay visitors in facilitating patient attendance at cardiac rehabilitation. The implied costs of interventions varied widely.

Overall, few trials aimed at improving uptake of cardiac rehabilitation were identified. The need for trials of interventions applicable to all patients and targeting specific under-represented groups is suggested by observational studies.

Chapter 9

Systematic review of interventions to improve adherence to cardiac rehabilitation

Background

Following successful recruitment of patients to a cardiac rehabilitation programme it is important to promote patient adherence to the programme and to maintain associated lifestyle changes. This systematic review aims to assess the effectiveness of methods for increasing patient adherence to cardiac rehabilitation and to suggest areas for further research. For the review adherence was defined as patient attendance at all or the majority of a programme, or maintenance of lifestyle changes associated with cardiac rehabilitation.

Results

Studies included in the review of interventions to improve adherence with cardiac rehabilitation

In Appendix 10 the flow of articles through the review process is shown in accordance with QUOROM.¹⁰¹ Thirty-eight articles reporting 37 studies identified as relevant to the review of methods to improve adherence to outpatient cardiac rehabilitation and its components were formally included in the review. A broad definition of adherence was applied, with included studies reporting attempts to improve overall programme attendance or compliance with aspects of cardiac rehabilitation. In-depth reading by two reviewers (KR and AB) found 14 studies reporting evaluation of an intervention relating to adherence in an appropriate patient group and with a relevant outcome. Only studies with an explicit statement in their objectives that the intervention under evaluation was designed to promote adherence or those studies with objectives that were explicitly to examine the effects of an intervention on adherence were included in the review.

Studies were characterised by study design and size, the study participants, nature of the intervention, comparison group, principal and other outcomes, and authors' conclusions.

A brief summary of studies is presented in *Table 21*, with further details in Appendix 11. Two reports were identified describing the study of Miller and colleagues.^{143,144}

Studies excluded from the review of interventions to improve adherence to cardiac rehabilitation

Papers not included in the review are summarised in Appendix 12. Nine out of 23 studies excluded from the review looked at the effectiveness of different rehabilitation formats: home-based cardiac rehabilitation,^{73,131,134,158} different intensities or duration of exercise training,^{159–161} group counselling¹⁶² or structured teaching.¹⁶³ These were not included in the review as they reported effectiveness of interventions with no specific aim at improving patient adherence to cardiac rehabilitation. Thirteen studies had either no relevant outcome^{126,164–172} or no comparison group.^{173–175} One study presented retrospective data with no indication of how patients came to receive an intervention.¹²¹

Methodological qualities of studies included in the review of interventions to improve adherence to cardiac rehabilitation

Fourteen studies were identified, of which half were RCTs^{145–151} and half were non-randomised studies.^{143,144,152–157} One randomised¹⁴⁷ and one non-randomised study¹⁵⁶ reported two distinct interventions. In the non-randomised studies patients were designated to groups by alternate allocation,^{143,144,152} before and after implementation of an intervention^{154,156,157} and by random allocation with some non-random allocation aimed at increasing numbers in the intervention group.¹⁵³ In two studies the allocation to groups was not clearly described.^{155,156}

In six studies patients with one specific diagnosis were included and in eight studies less specific selection was applied. Patients represented were myocardial infarction (nine studies), CABG (eight studies), angina (three studies), PTCA (three

TABLE 21 Studies evaluating interventions to improve adherence to cardiac rehabilitation

Authors, year and country	Study type and patients	Intervention	Outcome relevant to adherence	Comments
RCTs				
Oldridge & Jones, 1983 ¹⁴⁵ Canada	RCT, 120 MI, CABG and angina patients	Self-management: agreement to participate in exercise rehabilitation programme signed by patient and coordinator; self-report diary with monitoring of heart rates; questionnaires of daily activities; weight loss and smoking diaries. Progress discussed with coordinator at regular intervals	Attendance at >60% of exercise sessions was 54% in the intervention group and 42% in the control group (not statistically significant)	
Daltroy, 1985 ¹⁴⁶ USA	RCT, 174 MI, CABG, PTCA and angina patients	Persuasive telephone education intervention to improve patient adherence to exercise regimens. Oral commitment to attend. Spouse telephone counselling	Attendance at exercise sessions by patients was 63.8% in the intervention group and 62.2% in the comparison group (not statistically significant)	
Mahler <i>et al.</i> , 1999 ¹⁴⁷ USA	RCT with two intervention groups and one control group, 215 CABG patients	Post-CABG surgery videotape. (1) Mastery: depicts patients as calm and confident, making steady progress with relative ease. (2) Coping: recovery portrayed as steady forward progression of ups and downs	Exercise compliance improved with both interventions compared with controls ($p < 0.02$ to $p < 0.05$). Reduction in dietary cholesterol and saturated fat at 1 month in both intervention groups compared with controls ($p < 0.05$) but not at 3 months	
Aish & Isenberg, 1996 ¹⁴⁸ Canada	RCT, 104 MI patients	Nursing intervention of nutritional self-care. Food habits assessed and suggestions for changes given with patient commitment. Follow-up telephone calls	Total dietary and saturated fat significantly reduced in the intervention group ($p < 0.01$). Also significant improvements in food habits ($p < 0.05$)	
Ashe, 1993 ¹⁴⁹ USA	Allocation by form in sealed envelope, 41 MI, CABG, angina, valve problem patients	Motivational relapse prevention during the CR programme: identification of factors interfering with adherence; goals for programme; coping with slips; stressors affecting lifestyle. Also stress management, exercise and relaxation procedure	Total adherence to the maximum number of exercise sessions was 90% in the intervention group and 89% in the control group (not significant)	

continued

TABLE 21 Studies evaluating interventions to improve adherence to cardiac rehabilitation (cont'd)

Authors, year and country	Study type and patients	Intervention	Outcome relevant to adherence	Comments
Hopper, 1995 ¹⁵⁰ USA	RCT, 80 MI, CABG, angioplasty patients	Monthly telephone contact by a cardiac nurse or exercise physiologist to promote exercise, healthy diet, medication usage, risk factor knowledge and identification of symptoms	No difference between groups in exercise habit or intention to exercise. Conditions that facilitated the performance of exercise were improved in the intervention group compared with control ($p < 0.05$)	Losses to follow-up of 45% in the intervention group and 47% in controls
Duncan <i>et al.</i> , 2001 ¹⁵¹ USA	RCT, eight heart failure patients	Behavioural feedback intervention on dietary sodium intake. Discussion of problem-solving strategies to reduce sodium intake	Sodium intake was significantly less in the intervention group (1569 vs 2836 mg, $p < 0.05$)	Small feasibility study, four patients in each group
Non-randomised studies				
Leslie & Schuster, 1991 ¹⁵² USA	Alternate allocation, 30 MI, CABG, angioplasty, coronary disease patients	Written exercise contract negotiated with the patient. On completion of the contract patients received a reward	No significant difference in attendance in intervention (90%) and control (89%). Significant increase in exercise knowledge in the intervention group	
Miller <i>et al.</i> , 1988, ¹⁴³ 1989 ¹⁴⁴ USA	Alternate allocation, 115 MI patients	Nurse intervention to improve medical regimen. (1) Assessment: attitudes and regimen compliance. (2) Problem identification. (3) Goal setting	No significant differences in health behaviour and attitude scales	Repeated self-evaluation questionnaires and visits may have acted as intervention in control group
Lack, 1985 ¹⁵³ USA	Part random, part non-randomised, 48 CHD, MI, CABG patients	Insight-orientated group psychotherapy. Supportive, cooperative and goal directed. Highlight and promote change in non-compliance with physician recommendations	Self-report measures of compliance 2.57 for intervention and 2.37 control groups (not significant). Intervention group attended 88.4% of the prescribed exercise sessions compared with 75.7% in the control group ($p < 0.05$)	
Marshall <i>et al.</i> , 1986 ¹⁵⁴ USA	Patients seen in different periods, 60 CABG patients	Nurse-led structured teaching programme to increase patients' knowledge and compliance to medication, diet, smoking cessation and exercise	Overall compliance score assessed by self-report was 86.8 in the intervention group, and 79.5 in the control group ($p < 0.05$). Compliance better in intervention than control group for activity (15.6 vs 7 blocks walked, $p < 0.005$)	
Huerin <i>et al.</i> , 1998 ¹⁵⁵ Argentina	Non-randomised study, 509 CHD patients	Adherence strategy with signed commitment to rehabilitation, family involvement, sports, recreational activities and talks	Attendance at $\geq 66\%$ sessions. RR 2.3 (95% CI 1.8 to 2.9) at 12 weeks, 2.9 (2.3 to 3.7) at 24 weeks, 4.25 (3.2 to 5.6) at 52 weeks (log-rank test between strategies, $p < 0.001$)	No information on group allocation

continued

TABLE 21 Studies evaluating interventions to improve adherence to cardiac rehabilitation (cont'd)

Authors, year and country	Study type and patients	Intervention	Outcome relevant to adherence	Comments
McKenna <i>et al.</i> , 1998 ¹⁵⁶ UK	(1) Non-randomised study. (2) MI patients compared with historical controls	(1) Low-intensity exercise for patients unable to take part in standard exercise owing to co-morbidity. (2) Women-only groups	Attendance was 82% in the low-intensity exercise group and 34% in the standard rehabilitation comparison group. Significance not assessed as patient numbers not reported. Attendance in the women-only group was 75%, compared with 6% historically	Patient numbers not reported. The magnitude of changes cannot be assessed
Erling & Oldridge, 1985 ¹⁵⁷ Canada	Before-and-after study, 90 CHD patients	Spouse support in outpatient CR. Compares baseline before spouse participation, patients with spouse participation and patients with no spouse participation	Attendance increased from 44% to 90% for programme with spouse participation ($p < 0.001$), and 67% for programme with no spouse participation ($p < 0.05$)	

RR, relative risk.

studies), heart failure (one study), valve replacement (one study) and non-specific coronary heart disease (four studies).

In eight studies (two randomised) the outcome was attendance at exercise sessions.^{145,146,149,152,153,155–157}

In six studies (four randomised) the outcome was questionnaire assessment of diet or exercise behaviours to determine compliance with lifestyle changes.^{143,144,147,148,150,151,154}

The method of randomisation was described in two of the seven RCTs^{145,146} and blind outcome assessment in one randomised study.¹⁴⁶ None of the seven non-randomised studies reported blind outcome assessment. Baseline characteristics of intervention and comparison groups were described in three randomised trials,^{146,148,150} and in one trial patients were stratified by factors predictive of dropout from cardiac rehabilitation.¹⁴⁵ In five non-randomised studies baseline characteristics of patients were reported.^{143,144,152–155} Eight studies provided information on losses to follow-up.^{143–147,149,150,152,153} In one randomised study loss to follow-up was particularly high at 45–47%.¹⁵⁰

Themes identified from the review of interventions to improve adherence to cardiac rehabilitation

Interventions to improve adherence to cardiac rehabilitation or elements of the rehabilitation process were varied and frequently multifaceted.

However, five general themes are apparent: formal patient commitment, spouse or family involvement, strategies to aid self-management, education, and psychological intervention. Studies with more than one component are included in each appropriate theme.

Formal patient commitment

In four studies an agreement between the patient and the programme staff was a key element of the intervention.^{145,146,152,155} In the trial of Leslie and Schuster¹⁵² the intervention was solely a written contingency contract with rewards for successful completion of attainable exercise behaviours. Patients were allocated alternatively to intervention and comparison groups, which were reasonably well matched. Attendance rates at exercise sessions were similar in the two groups, although patients in the contract group showed a significant increase in exercise knowledge compared with controls. Overall participation at exercise sessions was notably high (90%). In the RCT of Oldridge and Jones,¹⁴⁵ a self-managed adherence promoting strategy incorporating signed commitment was associated with a non-significant improvement in attendance at an exercise rehabilitation programme. Huerin and colleagues¹⁵⁵ reported a significant increase in cardiac rehabilitation attendance in patients receiving an adherence-promoting strategy with signed agreement, but little information was presented on the allocation of patients to groups. Daltroy¹⁴⁶ reported an RCT in which oral commitment was included in a

persuasive telephone intervention to improve patient adherence to an exercise programme. No improvement in attendance was seen in patients receiving the intervention.

Spouse or family involvement

Three studies included an intervention directed at the patient's spouse or family.^{146,155,157} Erling and Oldridge¹⁵⁷ reported a before-and-after study in which a spouse support programme was associated with significantly increased patient attendance at a cardiac rehabilitation programme. The authors showed no baseline comparisons of the two groups. In the RTC of persuasive telephone education, Daltroy¹⁴⁶ provided telephone counselling to patient spouses. No improvement in attendance was associated with the intervention. Family involvement was also a component of the adherence strategy of Huerin and colleagues.¹⁵⁵ Improved outpatient cardiac rehabilitation attendance was observed, but lack of information on group allocation limits the value of the study.

Strategies to aid self-management

Five studies reported interventions based on self-management techniques.^{143–145,148,149,151} In the RCT of Oldridge and Jones,¹⁴⁵ as well as signed agreement, patients completed and received feedback on self-report diaries of heart rate, daily activities, weight loss and smoking habit. The intervention was associated with a non-significant increase in attendance at the exercise rehabilitation programme. Aish and Isenberg¹⁴⁸ reported an RCT of nutritional self-care based on the model of Orem,¹⁷⁶ in which patients had food habits assessed and individualised nutritional goals set. Significant improvements in dietary variables were achieved in the self-care patients. A similar programme of assessment, problem identification and goal setting was assessed in a trial by Miller and colleagues,^{143,144} in which patients were allocated alternatively to intervention and control after completion of a course of inpatient rehabilitation. Regimen compliance measured by health behaviour and attitude scales did not differ between groups. The authors noted that the frequent completion of self-evaluation questionnaires and data collection visits by nurses may have served as an effective intervention in the control group. In the thesis by Ashe¹⁴⁹ an apparently randomised approach was used to evaluate a motivational relapse prevention programme, based on Marlatt and Gordon's model,¹⁷⁷ for patients after an outpatient cardiac rehabilitation programme. Patients were allocated to groups according to the forms contained in

sealed envelopes. As with other self-management interventions this included assessment, problem identification and goal setting. Adherence to exercise was similar in the intervention and control groups. However, it should be noted that the control patients received an intervention which, although not designed as a motivational programme, did provide patients with an equivalent number of extra sessions of exercise education. A small RCT described by Duncan and colleagues¹⁵¹ applied self-management and behavioural feedback methods to the control of sodium intake. Heart failure patients attending a cardiopulmonary rehabilitation programme were randomised to receive an intervention with assessment of sodium intake, discussion of problem-solving strategies and follow-up. Patients receiving the intervention had a significantly reduced sodium intake.

Educational intervention

Four studies of educational interventions aimed at improving adherence to components of cardiac rehabilitation were identified.^{146,147,150,154} The RCT reported by Daltroy included an educational intervention in the form of telephone counselling.¹⁴⁶ This was designed as a persuasive communication with emphasis on the benefits of exercise, realistic expectations of recovery and coping methods. Attendance at exercise programmes was not improved in the group with the educational intervention. In the RCT of Mahler and colleagues¹⁴⁷ patients were shown educational videotapes before discharge from hospital. The tapes provided information regarding recovery delivered by a healthcare expert. Compliance with exercise and dietary advice measured by questionnaire was increased in patients receiving the intervention. The authors suggest that presenting the information in a format describing a realistic coping approach to recovery may be beneficial. Hopper¹⁵⁰ described an RCT of regular educational and supportive telephone calls. Although no difference was shown in exercise behaviour between groups, those patients receiving the supportive educational intervention did report improvement in conditions facilitating the performance of exercise. Marshall and colleagues¹⁵⁴ compared the effect of nurse-led structured and non-structured postoperative teaching in two consecutive groups of patients. Patient characteristics and risk factors were similar in the two groups. Measures of compliance based on self-report of activity, smoking, and a composite of activity, smoking, diet and medications were improved in the structured teaching group.

TABLE 22 Resource implications of interventions to improve adherence to cardiac rehabilitation

	Staff	Equipment	Consumables	Notes
Strategy to aid self-management				
Nursing intervention of nutritional self-care (Aish & Isenberg, 1996 ¹⁴⁸)	Nurse	Telephone	One visit in hospital and local visit; three telephone calls per patient; dietary records	
Behavioural feedback on dietary sodium (Duncan <i>et al.</i> , 2001 ¹⁵¹)	Nurse		Two interviews during outpatient rehabilitation; dietary records	
Educational intervention				
Post-CABG surgery videotape (Mahler <i>et al.</i> , 1999 ¹⁴⁷)		Video recording and player		Video shown in hospital before discharge

Psychological intervention

One intervention describing a specifically psychological intervention was identified.¹⁵³ Lack¹⁵³ describes an insight-orientated group psychotherapy intervention in a partially randomised study. The randomised group was augmented with non-randomised patients if there were insufficient numbers to form an intervention group. For the intervention patients were encouraged to communicate thoughts and feelings and to promote changes in behaviours likely to affect recovery. Self-report and physiological markers of compliance to exercise were little changed by the intervention. However, there was a significantly higher attendance at exercise sessions in the patients receiving the psychotherapy intervention.

Other interventions

Two reports described interventions that did not fit into the above themes.^{155,156} McKenna and colleagues¹⁵⁶ reported that attendance was increased after implementation of women-only and low-intensity exercise programmes. Numbers in comparison groups and patient characteristics were not reported. In the study by Huerin and colleagues¹⁵⁵ recreational activities and sports were included in the adherence strategy. Again, the reporting precludes any assessment of value.

Resource implications of interventions to improve adherence to cardiac rehabilitation

Information provided on resource use associated with effective interventions from studies of reasonable quality is summarised in *Table 22*. The interventions can be summarised into two categories: strategies to aid self-management, and

educational interventions. Studies provided limited information on the resource inputs and no information on the costs associated with these resource inputs.

It is unclear whether the strategies to aid self-management can be implemented by existing staff or require the employment of extra staff and, if so, how many. The intervention described by Aish and Isenberg¹⁴⁸ consisted of two interviews with a nurse for dietary assessment and three follow-up telephone calls by a nurse for each patient. The first interview was conducted in hospital and the second at a home visit. Duncan and colleagues¹⁵¹ evaluated a similar intervention, but in their study both interviews were conducted during outpatient cardiac rehabilitation sessions. In both studies patients were also required to complete a 3-day dietary intake log. The videotape intervention of Mahler and colleagues¹⁴⁷ was provided in hospital before discharge. After initial preparation of educational material the main resource input of the intervention would be the appropriate audiovisual equipment.

Further interventions that may improve adherence to cardiac rehabilitation suggested in the literature

The literature review identified a number of suggested interventions for improving adherence to cardiac rehabilitation. Although these potential interventions were not evaluated, the studies provided some evidence to suggest methods meriting further investigation. Examples of interventions excluded from the review at both formal extraction and the earlier inclusion stage, but with possible value in improving uptake, are summarised thematically in *Table 23*.

TABLE 23 Further interventions that may improve adherence to cardiac rehabilitation suggested in the literature

Authors, year	Intervention	Purpose of study
Non-specific		
McGee & Horgan, 1992 ⁵⁴	Former patients as models may help to promote adherence	Audit
Tooth & McKenna, 1996 ¹⁷⁸	Strategy to improve self-efficacy. Patient modelling on video and audiotape and in leaflets. Patients view other patients (e.g. healthy meal preparation)	Review
Koikkalainen <i>et al.</i> , 1996 ¹⁷⁹	Social skill and taste-training may remove barriers to a healthy lifestyle	Structured interviews
Knapp & Blackwell, 1985 ¹⁸⁰	Offering specific and practical assistance for spouses (e.g. menus and recipes) to help improve, lifestyle change	Review
Edgren, 1998 ¹⁸¹	Hydrotherapy as part of the exercise component. To increase self-training patients attend a gym and/or hydro session weekly	Generic case study and interviews
Lee <i>et al.</i> , 1996 ¹⁶¹	Lower intensity exercise programme	RCT of effectiveness
Oldridge, 1984 ¹⁸²	Vary programme and include swimming and different exercise equipment	Review
DeBusk <i>et al.</i> , 1994 ¹⁸³	Case management and risk stratification. A more individualised package of care may lead to improved adherence	RCT of effectiveness
Roitman, <i>et al.</i> , 1998 ¹³⁵		Review
Hoepfel-Harris, 1980 ¹⁸⁴	Provide classes at convenient times, including before work and evenings	Review
Comoss, 1988 ¹⁸⁵		Review
Emery, 1995 ¹⁸⁶		Review
Interventions for women		
Radley <i>et al.</i> , 1998 ⁵⁷	A one-off women-only education session may help to address gender-sensitive rehabilitation issues	Retrospective study
Moore & Kramer, 1996 ¹⁸⁷	Women-specific social support, exercise variety and choice, and social opportunities	Focus-group interviews
Brezinka <i>et al.</i> , 1998 ¹³⁹	Women-specific counselling and smaller exercise sessions	Comparative semistructured interviews and questionnaires
Toobert <i>et al.</i> , 1998 ¹⁴⁰	Women's retreat to improve emotional social support and relationships with cardiac rehabilitation staff	RCT of effectiveness
Cannistra <i>et al.</i> , 1992 ²⁴	Provision of childcare or home-help for women attending cardiac rehabilitation	Prospective comparison study of men and women
Interventions for the elderly		
Allen & Redman, 1996 ¹⁸⁸	Awareness of elderly-specific hindrances. Shorter education sessions with less information run at a slower pace	Review
Interventions for ethnic groups		
Caulin-Glaser & Schmeizel, 2000 ¹²³	Take account of cultural and racial differences when attempting to improve diet and exercise habits. African-American males showed fewer improvements in diet than Caucasians	Prospective observational study
Eftekhari <i>et al.</i> , 2000 ¹⁸⁹	Translation and presentation of educational material for Asian patients	Programme description

Discussion

Information came from journals (seven studies), theses (three studies) and conference abstracts (four studies). It was disappointing to find that some evaluations of potentially valuable methods to improve adherence to outpatient cardiac rehabilitation and its components were only found in the grey literature, with little chance of being read by health professionals.

Systematic review of the literature identified five main intervention themes: formal patient commitment, spouse or family involvement, strategies to aid self-management, education, and psychological therapy.

The review of the literature gave little support to the use of written and oral commitments to promote exercise adherence. The one study looking exclusively at written contracting showed

no effect using a non-randomised design.¹⁵² Attendance in both intervention and control groups was high at about 90%. A randomised trial of a self-management programme incorporating signed agreement to participate as an adjunct to an exercise rehabilitation programme showed a non-significant improvement in attendance.¹⁴⁵ The small benefit cannot be attributed entirely to written communication as the intervention included several other self-management approaches. Similarly, in a study of persuasive intervention by telephone with additional spouse counselling, oral commitment constituted one part of the intervention.¹⁴⁶ No improvement in attendance was attributed to this package of measures. One further study provided little methodological information to substantiate an observed improvement in cardiac rehabilitation after an adherence strategy incorporating signed commitment.¹⁵⁵ Overall, the value of formal commitment in promoting adherence to cardiac rehabilitation is not supported by evidence from the literature. The identification of only one study looking specifically at written agreement to participate, but in which attendance was uniformly high in intervention and comparison groups may suggest the need for more trials. However, it is probable that the use of written and oral commitment has better application in the promotion of outpatient cardiac rehabilitation uptake rather than adherence.

Evidence for the benefit of spouse or family involvement in increasing rehabilitation adherence was limited by the designs of studies. One study looking specifically at a spouse support programme provided no information on baseline characteristics or group allocation.¹⁵⁷ In another randomised study telephone counselling for spouses was provided in addition to a more intensive patient counselling intervention, but no improvement in attendance was observed.¹⁴⁶ Another study incorporated family involvement into an adherence-promoting strategy, but little information on the design or conduct of the study was reported.¹⁵⁵ None of these studies addressed specifically the issue of spouse or family involvement in promoting rehabilitation attendance in an adequately designed trial. Evidence for the effectiveness of counselling and support in helping spouses and families to cope with patient illness suggests that interventions may have value other than in promoting adherence to cardiac rehabilitation.^{144,190}

Studies reporting strategies to aid self-management aimed at improving adherence to

rehabilitation goals give some suggestion of benefit. In a randomised trial of self-evaluation and information feedback on exercise and risk factors a non-significant improvement in attendance at rehabilitation was observed.¹⁴⁵ In this trial patients were also asked for written commitment. Another randomised trial reported improvements in dietary habits,¹⁴⁸ and a small, randomised trial showed reduced sodium intake after individualised assessment and goal setting.¹⁵¹ However, two trials, one randomised¹⁴⁹ and the other with non-random allocation to groups,^{143,144} suggested no benefit for assessment and goal setting in improving health behaviours or exercise adherence. The authors noted that control patients in these studies received regular self-evaluation questionnaires and nurse visits for data collection^{143,144} or an educational intervention unrelated to self-management,¹⁴⁹ which may have affected outcomes. In trials a repeatedly administered evaluation tool may act as an intervention. In conclusion, the uses of appropriate techniques promoting self-management in specific areas of rehabilitation are at least worthy of further study.

Studies of educational interventions to improve adherence to components of cardiac rehabilitation gave little encouragement. No benefits of education and counselling on attendance at an exercise programme were seen in two RCTs using telephone interventions.^{146,150} A pre-discharge videotaped educational intervention was effective in improving exercise and dietary compliance.¹⁴⁷ Although this may be of benefit in the early phases of rehabilitation it is likely to have limited value in the promotion of adherence to outpatient cardiac rehabilitation. However, the study did suggest that presentation of information in a format describing recovery based on a coping approach may be most effective. The importance of the method of dissemination of educational information was also suggested by a before-and-after study showing benefit for a structured teaching approach.¹⁵⁴

One partially randomised study reported a psychological intervention aimed at improving exercise adherence.¹⁵³ Although no significant improvement in self-reported exercise was observed, the patients receiving a 12-week psychotherapy intervention attended more cardiac rehabilitation exercise sessions. This improved attendance may be a consequence of the psychological features of the intervention or of the extra requirement to attend the rehabilitation centre. The lack of an effect on self-reported exercise tends to support the latter.

Two studies reported other approaches to improving adherence. These were the inclusion of recreational activities and sports in the programme¹⁵⁵ and the introduction of outpatient cardiac rehabilitation designed specifically for women.¹⁵⁶ Little can be learned from either study as insufficient information on patients and study methods was reported.

Little information on the costs associated with effective interventions can be inferred from the published reports. One can do little more than guess the time commitment of nursing staff to undertake these extra tasks. Strategies to improve patient self-management, such as dietary assessments, could be incorporated into outpatient cardiac rehabilitation session and may therefore not require home visits. Nurses would still require training in the evaluation of diet and the analysis of questionnaire data, and this may serve to formalise assessment and procedures already in place in cardiac rehabilitation.

With respect to the educational intervention, videos are frequently used to provide information to patients before discharge, and presentation of information in an alternative delivery format would not have resource implications. However, initial preparation or purchase of appropriate educational videos would be required.

Outside those trials aimed at improving adherence to cardiac rehabilitation several interventions have been suggested but not evaluated. These include more approaches based around improvements in patient self-efficacy. The inclusion in programmes of previous patients or representation on video of behaviour of model patients showing appropriate lifestyle change (e.g. relating to food preparation) may be a useful format for delivery of information.^{54,178} Similarly, practical demonstration that a healthy diet can be palatable and enjoyable may be a method to promote adherence to dietary change.¹⁷⁹ In these areas of intervention the involvement of spouses may be appropriate.¹⁸⁰

Alternative forms of exercise, including swimming,¹⁸² hydrotherapy¹⁸¹ and lower intensity training,¹⁶¹ may be worthy of evaluation in improving adherence to rehabilitation. Programmes with lower exercise intensities may be more likely to achieve maximum attendance,¹⁶¹ but an extended length programme may be required to maintain benefits.¹⁴⁴ Slower paced and less detailed sessions may be appropriate in the provision of educational information to elderly patients.¹⁸⁸

Women patients may prefer different kinds of exercise to men and be more likely to adhere to rehabilitation other than treadmill and cycle.¹⁸⁷ Other interventions that may improve adherence by women patients suggested in the literature include education, counselling and social support addressing issues specific to women's recovery.^{57,139,187} Provision of childcare or home-help for women attending cardiac rehabilitation may improve adherence.²⁴

Taking into account cultural and racial differences in the promotion of exercise and diet may help to improve adherence by ethnic groups to rehabilitation.¹²³ Translation of educational materials and presentation in an appropriate way may improve adherence in ethnic minority groups.¹⁸⁹

Other forms of rehabilitation based around risk stratification and case management are suggested as methods to improve patient adherence,^{133,183} but the effectiveness of this approach compared with outpatient rehabilitation with appropriate outcome measures is not known. Similarly, provision of support at a women's retreat may serve to promote lifestyle change, although its effectiveness as an adjunct to outpatient care has not been evaluated.¹⁴⁰

Providing classes at times to suit patients may improve adherence to cardiac rehabilitation. Patients may find it easier to attend classes timed before work and in the evening.¹⁸⁴⁻¹⁸⁶

The systematic review of the literature found few studies of sufficient quality to make specific recommendations of methods to improve adherence to outpatient cardiac rehabilitation and its components. The most promising approach was the use of self-management techniques based around individualised assessment, problem solving, goal setting and follow-up. This is most likely to be effective in improving specific aspects of rehabilitation, including exercise and diet. Further investigation of this approach may be best carried out by a systematic review of self-management interventions in less specific patient groups than considered here. Patient commitment to attend did not suggest benefit in the promotion of adherence to aspects of outpatient cardiac rehabilitation, but may be useful in improving uptake of rehabilitation. Other interventions identified in the literature may already be standard practice: use of educational video and classes, and psychological support are features of the modern rehabilitation programme. Similarly,

spouse and family support may be provided as an adjunct to a rehabilitation programme for reasons unrelated to patient adherence.

Perhaps the most disappointing outcome of the review is the dearth of literature reporting the evaluation of simple interventions aimed at improving adherence to cardiac rehabilitation for all patients or specific groups of patients. No interventions were reported to address the frequently cited patient reasons for non-adherence of perceived recovery, illness, transport difficulties, inconvenient timing or care of dependent relatives. Similarly, no evaluations were identified of programmes designed to improve adherence for specific patient groups frequently under-represented in outpatient cardiac rehabilitation (including women, the elderly and ethnic minority groups). The lack of published studies may reflect an under-appreciation by both rehabilitation staff and journal editors of the value of trials in evaluating new interventions to improve adherence to cardiac rehabilitation. Surveys and audits suggest that programme coordinators may recognise deficits and the need for improvements in services and implement changes to provision without formal evaluation. The ineffectiveness of several types of intervention to improve adherence to cardiac rehabilitation identified in this systematic review demonstrates that innovations in services should be tested in well-designed studies.

Conclusions

The systematic review identified few studies of sufficient quality to assess the effectiveness of interventions to improve adherence to cardiac rehabilitation. Half of the studies found were in sources outside the mainstream of medical literature.

Self-management techniques suggested some value in the promotion of specific aspects of lifestyle change and a further review in a broader context of health and disease may be appropriate. Educational interventions aimed at improving adherence gave equivocal results and suggest that the format of the intervention merits further study.

Observational studies identify many areas where interventions may serve to improve patient adherence to cardiac rehabilitation, and surveys and audits show that interventions have already been implemented. The systematic review of the literature suggests that, before implementation, interventions should be evaluated in well-conducted studies with economic assessment, and the results disseminated widely and reviewed regularly.

Chapter 10

Systematic review of interventions to improve professional compliance with cardiac rehabilitation

Background

Barriers to attendance at and adherence with outpatient cardiac rehabilitation associated with service factors have been identified. However, the effectiveness of interventions to improve professional compliance with the provision of cardiac rehabilitation has not been assessed by systematic review. This systematic review aims to assess the effectiveness of methods for increasing professional compliance with cardiac rehabilitation and to identify areas meriting further research. The review includes interventions to encourage healthcare professionals to comply with guidelines or good practice regarding invitation and support of patients' cardiac rehabilitation.

Results

Studies included in the review of interventions to improve professional compliance with cardiac rehabilitation

Eighteen articles reporting 17 studies were identified as relevant to the review of methods to improve professional compliance with cardiac rehabilitation and were formally included in the review. Reading by three reviewers (SE, FT and AB) found six studies reporting evaluation of an intervention relating to an appropriate patient group and with a relevant outcome. The flow of articles through the review process is shown in accordance with QUOROM in Appendix 13.¹⁰¹ Studies were characterised by type and size, participants, intervention, comparison group, principal and other outcomes, and authors' conclusions.

A brief summary of studies is presented in *Table 24*, with further details in Appendix 14. More than one report was identified from the trial of Jolly and colleagues¹⁰²⁻¹⁰⁴ and the reference providing the main source of information for the systematic review is cited in the tables and text.

Studies excluded from the review of interventions to improve professional compliance with cardiac rehabilitation

Eleven studies selected for data extraction but not included in the review are summarised in Appendix 15. More than one report was identified from the trial of Campbell and colleagues.^{125,126} The excluded studies either had no relevant outcome data,^{116,117,125-127,164,171,191} provided only descriptions of services with no outcomes^{119,175,192} or were retrospective in design.¹¹⁶

Methodological qualities of studies included in the review of interventions to improve professional compliance with cardiac rehabilitation

Six studies were identified that evaluated interventions to improve professional compliance with cardiac rehabilitation. Two reported RCTs. In one trial randomisation was on an individual basis,¹²⁴ but no other information on the method of randomisation, blind outcome assessment or baseline characteristics of groups was reported. In the other trial patients were randomised by general practice.¹⁰⁴ The authors of this trial described methods of randomisation, blind outcome assessment and baseline characteristics of groups. Loss to follow-up was low in this study. None of the other studies reported loss to follow-up. Four studies described outcomes in periods before and after implementation of an intervention.^{41,111,122,123} Baseline group characteristics for appropriate periods were not reported in any of these studies.

In three studies the outcome was attendance,^{41,104,111} in two referral^{122,123} and in one patient commitment to attend cardiac rehabilitation.¹²⁴ Four studies included only myocardial infarction patients.^{41,111,122,124} One study included myocardial infarction and angina patients¹⁰⁴ and another only post revascularisation patients.¹²³

TABLE 24 Studies evaluating interventions to improve professional compliance with cardiac rehabilitation

Authors, year and country	Study type and patients	Intervention	Findings relevant to uptake	Comments
RCTs				
Jolly <i>et al.</i> , 1999 ¹⁰⁴ UK	Cluster RCT, 67 general practices, 597 MI and angina patients	Liaison nurse supports practice nurses and encourages patients to see practice nurse after discharge. Patient-held record card to prompt and guide follow-up	42% of patients in the intervention group attended at least one outpatient CR session compared with 24% of controls ($p < 0.001$)	Multifaceted intervention. Management of patients in control practices not explicit
Suskin <i>et al.</i> , 2000 ¹²⁴ Canada	RCT, 50 patients	Attending physician provides written endorsement	62% of patients in the intervention group gave commitment to participate in CR compared with 38% in the control group ($p = 0.08$)	Abstract only
Non-randomised studies				
Kalayi <i>et al.</i> , 1999 ¹²² UK	Before-and-after study, 561 MI patients	Electronic referral pathway with feedback to ward staff on referral rates	After intervention referral increased from 194/298 (65%) to 208/263 (79%) ($p = 0.0002$)	Disparity between long-term and short-term referral rates
Mosca <i>et al.</i> , 1998 ⁴¹ USA	Before-and-after study, 199 MI patients	Prompt for outpatient CR in discharge critical care pathway	Critical care pathway associated with a non-significant increase in outpatient CR participation (OR 1.9, 95% CI 0.6 to 5.5)	No baseline group comparisons
Caulin-Glaser & Schmeizel, 2000 ¹²³ USA	Before-and-after study. Post-revascularisation patients. Patient numbers not specified	Educational intervention for healthcare providers on the comprehensive nature and benefits of CR. Instructions for nurses to discuss CR with patients and encourage discussion of referral with physicians	In-hospital referral increased by 50% ($p < 0.05$). Physician office referral increased by 61% ($p < 0.05$)	Abstract only
Scott <i>et al.</i> , 2000 ¹¹¹ Australia	Before-and-after study, 649 MI patients	Dissemination of clinical guidelines to hospital staff and general practitioners. Feedback on clinical indicators	After intervention outpatient CR utilisation increased from 24% to 54% ($p = 0.003$)	Baseline period corresponds to CR programme start-up

Themes identified from the review of interventions to improve professional compliance with cardiac rehabilitation

Three themes of interventions were identified in the systematic review: improvement of the referral process, coordination of transfer of care, and physician endorsement.

Improvement of referral process

Four studies were identified that evaluated methods to improve the referral process.^{41,111,122,123} In a study comparing periods before and after the introduction of an electronic

referral pathway Kalayi and colleagues¹²² observed a significant increase in patient referral to cardiac rehabilitation. The intervention was initiated with a referral section on the electronic patient record of patients discharged with a diagnosis of myocardial infarction. Subsequently, feedback on referral was given to ward staff. No information on group characteristics before and after intervention was provided and large differences between monthly and longer term referral rates suggest the presence of other sources of referral variability. Mosca and colleagues⁴¹ compared patient participation before and after the introduction of a

TABLE 25 Resource implications of intervention to improve professional compliance with cardiac rehabilitation

	Staff	Equipment	Consumables	Patient costs
Coordination of postdischarge care				
	Liaison nurse support for practice nurses (Jolly <i>et al.</i> , 1999 ¹⁰⁴)	Three cardiac liaison nurses	Training for cardiac liaison nurses and practice nurses	The study employed three nurses involving a total of 277 patients in 18 months

prompt for cardiac rehabilitation in a discharge critical care pathway. An improvement in participation in outpatient cardiac rehabilitation was observed, but this was not statistically significant. Group characteristics were not reported and other factors may have influenced levels of participation. Caulin-Glaser and Schmeizel¹²³ reported the implementation of an educational intervention for healthcare providers. Information on cardiac rehabilitation, including its comprehensive nature and benefits, was given to medical and nursing staff and on health outcomes and cost-effectiveness to members of the clinical cardiology council. After the intervention both in-hospital and physician office referral were significantly increased. Again, no baseline information to assess comparability of patient groups was provided. In the study of Scott and colleagues¹¹¹ patients admitted to hospital in three periods were compared. These were before, during and after the dissemination of clinical guidelines and feedback of clinical indicators to health professionals. The cardiac rehabilitation programme was operational during the implementation period and this was used as the baseline period for evaluation. A steady increase in utilisation of the outpatient cardiac rehabilitation service was observed during the implementation period and the authors attribute this to the intervention. However, no comparison of patient characteristics was available for the relevant periods and, although the authors report that the new cardiac rehabilitation service was fully operational, an increase in uptake might be expected with the new service.

Coordination of postdischarge care

Jolly and colleagues¹⁰⁴ reported a cluster RCT of coordination of care of myocardial infarction and angina patients between hospital and general practice by specialist cardiac liaison nurses. Attendance at one or more cardiac rehabilitation sessions was significantly increased in the intervention patients. The intervention consisted of three main elements: liaison nurse support for practice nurses, liaison nurse encouragement for

patients to see the practice nurse, and prompts and guidance for patients by means of a personal record card. The study design does not allow the effect of components to be assessed individually.

Physician endorsement

Suskin and colleagues¹²⁴ conducted an RCT comparing attending physician cardiac rehabilitation endorsement with a generic endorsement. The intervention was associated with a non-significant increase in patient-reported intent to participate in cardiac rehabilitation. No benefit was observed for in-person delivery of the endorsement. Little information on the conduct of the trial or patient characteristics was reported and the outcome of intention to attend is somewhat removed from actual attendance at cardiac rehabilitation.

Resource implications of intervention to improve professional compliance with cardiac rehabilitation

Information provided on resource use associated with the only effective intervention of reasonable quality is summarised in *Table 25*. As described earlier, in the study by Jolly and colleagues¹⁰⁴ three liaison nurses were employed with responsibility for the coordination of postdischarge care of 277 patients over 18 months, a yearly average of 62 patients per nurse. Transport costs incurred by liaison nurses visiting practices and by the practice nurses attending training and support groups were not quantified, nor was the resource input or cost of training liaison and practice nurses.

Further interventions that may improve professional compliance with cardiac rehabilitation suggested in the literature

The literature review identified a number of suggested interventions for improving professional compliance with cardiac rehabilitation. Although these potential interventions were not evaluated the studies provided some evidence to suggest methods meriting further investigation. Examples

TABLE 26 Further interventions that may improve professional compliance with cardiac rehabilitation suggested in the literature

Authors, year	Intervention	Purpose of study
Parks <i>et al.</i> , 2000 ³²	Appointment of CR programme director to lead, audit and commission appropriate resources	Audit
Parks <i>et al.</i> , 2000 ³²	Programme run in accordance with national guidelines	Audit
Young & Kahana, 1989 ⁴⁶ Bittner <i>et al.</i> , 1999 ³⁷	Physicians and insurers educated on benefits for patient groups	Retrospective observational Retrospective observational
Comoss 1988 ¹⁸⁵	Referring physicians involved in programme	Review
Stokes, 2000 ¹⁹³	Education for CR coordinators and staff	Review
Parks <i>et al.</i> , 2000 ³²	Explicit criteria for CR eligibility	Audit
King & Teo, 1998 ¹⁹⁴	Streamlining of referral	Review
Parks <i>et al.</i> , 2000 ³²	Centralised CR attendance and contact records	Audit
Levknecht <i>et al.</i> 1997 ¹¹⁶	Clinical pathway and clinical quality improvement tool	Programme description
Cannistra <i>et al.</i> , 1995 ¹²⁸	Early social services involvement to improve social support and hence uptake of CR	Prospective comparison
Effron <i>et al.</i> , 1986 ¹⁹⁵	CR commenced earlier	Retrospective observational
Roitman <i>et al.</i> , 1998 ¹³⁵	Removal of time restriction for start of programme	Review

of interventions excluded from the review at both formal extraction and the earlier inclusion stage, but with possible value in improving professional compliance, are summarised thematically in *Table 26*.

Discussion

The healthcare professional has a pivotal role in recruitment of patients to cardiac rehabilitation, and their contribution is dependent on education, compliance with guidelines and coordination of services. Few studies aimed at improving professional compliance with outpatient cardiac rehabilitation were found. Three studies were published in peer-reviewed journals and three as conference abstracts.

Evaluations of three types of intervention were identified by systematic review: improvement of the referral process, coordination of postdischarge care, and physician endorsement of cardiac rehabilitation.

None of the four studies reporting interventions to improve the referral process included adequate methodological information. The use of a before-and-after study design might have provided some evidence on the effectiveness of interventions, but the lack of group comparisons and programme factors influencing patient attendance precludes

this. This is disappointing, as the inclusion of cardiac rehabilitation in a critical care pathway effective in promoting discharge medication is appealing. Similarly, improving referral by dissemination of clinical guidelines and subsequent feedback of clinical indicators to health professionals merits further evaluation.

A multifaceted approach to the coordination of transfer of care from hospital to general practice including liaison nurse support for practice nurses was effective in improving cardiac rehabilitation uptake in a randomised trial. Particular aspects of the intervention were not evaluated separately, and it is not possible to compare the relative importance of professional support of practice nurses, in-hospital nurse-patient contact and self-empowerment of patients with record cards. The possibility of referral of patients from general practice suggests that the involvement of practice nurses may be of particular value in the referral of angina patients who have not been admitted to hospital.

The value of physician endorsement in encouraging patient participation in cardiac rehabilitation was not confirmed. However, some support for further evaluation is suggested by the randomised trial of Suskin and colleagues,¹²⁴ where a non-significant tendency for increased patient commitment was seen in patients who had received an endorsement from an attending physician.

Systematic review of the literature did not identify any well-evaluated methods specifically aimed at improving professional compliance to cardiac rehabilitation. One multifaceted approach suggested benefit, but the importance of the intervention relating to improvement in professional compliance could not be distinguished from other patient-directed aspects of the intervention. The resource and therefore cost implications of this intervention are also unclear.

All interventions identified were aimed at improving overall cardiac rehabilitation attendance. It was surprising that no evaluations of interventions targeted at service improvements for specific patient groups were reported. Frequently under-represented patient groups include women, the elderly, ethnic minorities and patients with more severe presentation of disease or co-morbidity.

Although few trials were found with the intention of improving cardiac rehabilitation uptake and adherence by improving professional compliance, several areas for intervention are suggested in the literature. Many may already be regular practice, but some may have application in the provision of services to under-represented groups.

Uptake of rehabilitation services is influenced by the knowledge and enthusiasm of the physician and providers in the referral process.^{46,62,194} Consequently, education of physicians and providers on the benefits of cardiac rehabilitation may help to improve referral and uptake.^{37,46} This may be accomplished best by the involvement of referring physicians in the programme.¹⁸⁵ A coherent approach to the education of programme coordinators and staff on the benefits of cardiac rehabilitation and its application in patient groups may lead to better understanding of patient eligibility and thus wider invitation.¹⁹³ Appointment of a programme director to lead, audit and commission appropriate resources for cardiac rehabilitation may lead to improvements in service management and provision.³² This may facilitate the running of programmes in accordance with national guidelines, which may help to improve provision.³²

Although none of the studies included in the systematic review was of adequate quality to suggest that the use of clinical pathways may be of value in the management of cardiac rehabilitation referral, this approach may merit further investigation. The use of clinical pathways with

explicit criteria for patient eligibility may be an appropriate way to manage and streamline referral and invitation.^{32,116,194}

Flexibility in timing of care and support may be important in improving uptake of services. Visits at home by healthcare professionals may serve to provide continuity of care and improve uptake of cardiac rehabilitation.¹²⁸ The provision of cardiac rehabilitation early after discharge may coincide with the time of patients' greatest need for support and greatest motivation, and early invitation and provision may be rewarded by increased uptake.¹⁹⁵ Some patients may not find a particular date for commencing rehabilitation suitable, and flexibility and removal of time restrictions may lead to an increase in uptake.¹³⁵

The general scarcity of evaluated methods may reflect an under-appreciation of the value of trials in evaluating new interventions. Programme coordinators may recognise deficits and the need for improvements in services and implement changes without formal evaluation. For example, it may be assumed that incorporation of a prompt for referral in a discharge summary would be an effective way of ensuring referral. However, this does not necessarily mean that the crucial outcome of increased patient uptake and attendance at cardiac rehabilitation will be achieved. The systematic review of the literature suggests that well-designed studies are required to test interventions aimed at improving professional compliance with cardiac rehabilitation.

Conclusions

Little research has been conducted aimed at improving professional compliance with cardiac rehabilitation. The systematic review identified few studies that specifically looked at improving patient uptake and adherence by intervening at the level of healthcare professional activities.

The conduct of the healthcare professional is central in the recruitment of patients to cardiac rehabilitation and their contribution is dependent on education, compliance with guidelines and coordination of services. Changes within cardiac rehabilitation services aimed at improving patient uptake and adherence should be evaluated in well-designed studies and the results disseminated and reviewed; otherwise, ineffective and inappropriate methods may become routine clinical practice.

Chapter 11

Health service costs of cardiac rehabilitation in the UK

Objectives

- To estimate the health service costs associated with cardiac rehabilitation programmes in the UK.
- To estimate the national budget attributable to outpatient cardiac rehabilitation in the UK.
- To explore how coverage could be increased if different configurations of service were provided within the existing budget.
- To explore how coverage could be increased with additional funding.

Health service costs associated with cardiac rehabilitation

Methods

The costs associated with the provision of cardiac rehabilitation services from the health service perspective were estimated by considering the staff, overheads, building capital and equipment costs. The costs borne by patients such as travel costs or expenses for special clothing were not included, but it was recognised that these could have important implications if patients perceived them to be large enough to deter their attendance.

The BACR/BHF survey, described in Chapter 4, provided information on the typical number of hours per week by broad staff categories spent in outpatient (phase 3) cardiac rehabilitation programmes. The additional questionnaire provided information on the number of patients referred, joining and completing cardiac rehabilitation, the total number of sessions, and number and length of sessions per week.

Centres that responded to the short questionnaire and provided information on staff input ($n = 186$;

65% of all UK centres identified by BACR/BHF) were stratified by a criterion of multidisciplinary staff input. This was based on the assumption that a greater variety of staff input is a proxy for higher service quality. The following professional categories were considered to be relevant to an outpatient cardiac rehabilitation programme (hereafter referred to as 'key staff'):

- physician (GP, cardiologist, general physician)
- nurse
- physiotherapist/sport scientist
- occupational therapist
- psychologist
- dietitian
- pharmacist.

Three groups were defined according to the number of different types of key staff: group 1 having more than five different types of key staff, group 2 having three to five types of key staff, and group 3 having two or fewer. The total number of centres in each of these groups is shown in *Table 27*. Ten centres within each group were chosen at random to conduct a more detailed costing study.

Staff costs

All 30 centres in the random sample were contacted between April and June 2002 and provided more detailed information on the grades of staff working in 2000 (the year of the BACR/BHF survey). Staff costs were estimated by multiplying the average numbers of hours per week worked for each grade of staff by the hourly pay for that grade. Hourly pay rates were calculated by dividing the midpoint of the relevant pay scale by the numbers of hours of expected work per annum, excluding annual leave, bank holidays, and training/study and sickness days. All

TABLE 27 Stratification of cardiac rehabilitation centres ($n = 186$) by number of different types of key staff

Group	No. of different types of key staff	No of centres	%
1	>5	38	20.4
2	3–5	135	72.6
3	≤ 2	13	7.0

TABLE 28 Average hours per week by staff category

Staff grade	Group 1 ^a (n = 10)	Group 2 ^b (n = 10)	Group 3 ^c (n = 10)
Nurse grade:			
B		0.95	
E		7.2	
F	11.38	12.75	3
G	21.40	16.15	9.25
H	13.05	5.75	0.4
Physiotherapist:			
Helper		2	
Basic	0.20		
Senior I	10.05	5.4	2.7
Senior II		1.4	1.2
Superintendent III	2.6		
Superintendent IV	0.6		
Sport scientist		1.9	
Exercise physiologist	3.8		0.4
Occupational therapist:			
Basic	0.8		
Senior	2.7	0.05	0.3
Head	0.6		
Dietitian	0.47	0.18	
Senior dietitian	0.58	0.46	
Pharmacist	0.46	0.35	
Physician	0.38	0.75	
Clinical psychologist	0.67	0.3	
Cardiac technician	0.7	2	0.5
Social worker	0.1		
Secretary	4.2	5.04	0.3
Total (SD)	74.7 (5.8)	62.6 (4.7)	18.0 (2.9)
^a Centres with more than five key staff.			
^b Centres with three to five key staff.			
^c Centres with two or fewer key staff.			

pay scales were those prevailing on 1 April 2001 and included employers' on-costs (employers' contribution to national insurance plus 4% of salary contribution to superannuation).¹⁹⁶

Salaries information was taken from www.nhscareers.nhs.uk.¹⁹⁷ A detailed summary of unit cost estimates for different staff categories and grades is shown in Appendix 16.

Non-staff-related costs

Non-staff-related costs refer to the overheads, building capital and equipment costs associated with running cardiac rehabilitation services. Most cardiac rehabilitation services tend to use a number of different facilities to deliver the different components of the programme and do not have these figures readily available. Hence, allowances for indirect overheads (the costs of the support services such as human resources, finance and estates required to carry out the services main functions) and building capital (the costs assigned to treatment and non-treatment space)

relative to the midpoint of the relevant pay scale were based on Netten and colleagues¹⁹⁶ (see Appendix 16).

The required equipment was based on current recommendations from the BACR (see Appendix 17). The unit costs were obtained from the coordinator of the cardiac rehabilitation team of the Bristol Royal Infirmary. An equivalent annual cost was estimated by using an annuity factor of 6% and assumed lifespan of 5 years. Annual costs accounted for approximately £861 [value added tax (VAT) included].

Direct overheads, that is, the costs associated with lighting, heating and cleaning, were assumed to be 11% of the sum of staff costs, indirect overheads, building capital and equipment costs. This was based on previous studies carried out in hospital settings where the direct overheads were found to account for 4–18% (midpoint 11%) of total costs.^{198–200}

TABLE 29 Service provision, referral, uptake and completion rates for 30 UK cardiac rehabilitation centres in 2000 (stratified by staff mix)

	Group 1 (n = 10)		Group 2 (n = 10)		Group 3 (n = 10)	
	Mean	Median	Mean	Median	Mean	Median
Hours per patient	29.0	27	24	215	20	17.5
No. referred	282.4	289	352.5	255	170.7	150
No. joined	157.3	148	194.3	172	97.9	104
% of referrals	56	51	55	67	57	69
No. completed	126.3	104	158	150	89	92
% of referrals	45	36	45	59	52	62

TABLE 30 Average cost estimates for cardiac rehabilitation (2000/01 prices)

Costs (£)	Group 1		Group 2		Group 3		Weighted costs	
	Staff costs	Total costs	Staff costs	Total costs	Staff costs	Total costs	Staff costs	Total costs
Per year/centre	53,100	72,700	42,100	57,400	12,400	17,600	42,300	57,700
Per patient referred	243	330	137	186	127	249	157	220
Per patient joined	421	571	236	320	174	324	269	371
Per patient completed	542	738	317	429	186	344	354	486
Per hour	20	27	14	20	14	30	15	22

The total cost of cardiac rehabilitation was estimated for each centre, and the cost per patient referred, joined and completed estimated. The cost per hour was also estimated, taking the cost per patient completing the programmes as the denominator. The costs of each centre within a group were then averaged. A weighted average cost was also estimated, using the proportion of centres nationally falling within each group (see *Table 27*).

Results

Information on the weekly staff input by staff category and grade for each centre in the random sample is shown in *Table 28* (a detailed summary of staff resource data for each centre is given in Appendix 18). Group 1 had higher levels of weekly staff input (75 hours) than centres in groups 2 (62 hours) and 3 (18 hours).

The average duration of the programmes by group is shown in *Table 29*. Centres that employ more than five different key staff (group 1) provide the most intensive service per patient, with an average duration of 29 hours per patient. This compares to 24 hours per patient for group 2 centres and 20 hours for group 3 centres (details given in Appendix 19). *Table 29* also gives, by group, the absolute number of patients referred,

joining and completing cardiac rehabilitation programmes. This varied widely, with the highest average numbers being in group 2.

The average staff costs and average total costs of cardiac rehabilitation are presented for each group in *Table 30* (more details shown in Appendix 20). There was a considerable difference in the cost of an average centre and in the average cost per patient between each group. The total average cost per patient completing the programme was £542 for group 1, £317 for group 2 and £186 for group 3. Staff costs accounted for 73% of the total costs for centres in groups 1 and 2, and 70% for centres in group 3 (based on cost per centre).

Figure 4 illustrates that nursing costs are the most important share of total staff costs, accounting for about 62% of total staff costs in group 1 centres, 67% in group 2 and 71% in group 3.

Physiotherapy costs are the second most important share of total costs, accounting for about 23% in group 1 and group 3 centres, and for about 14% in group 2 centres.

Weighted average staff and total costs are shown in *Table 30*. The weighted average cost per patient completing a cardiac rehabilitation programme was £354 (staff costs only) and £486 (total costs).

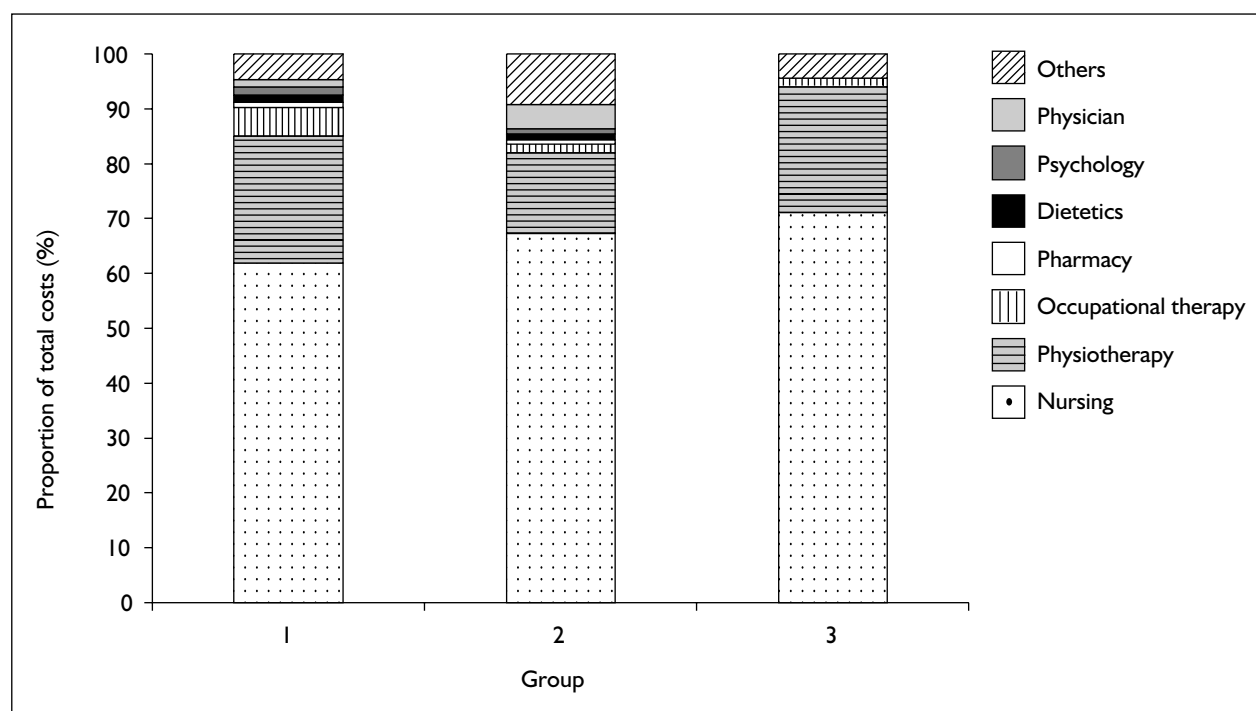


FIGURE 4 Proportion of total staff costs attributable to staff categories

The national budget attributable to cardiac rehabilitation

Methods

The budget attributable to outpatient (phase 3) cardiac rehabilitation was estimated separately for England, Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland using data from the BACR/BHF survey and the additional questionnaire (as described in Chapter 4). The total number of patients completing a cardiac rehabilitation programme was estimated for each country. Where centres did not provide data, the IQR derived from responding centres for that country was used to calculate total numbers.

The budget for each country was estimated by multiplying the number of patients (reported as lower and upper bound) completing a cardiac rehabilitation programme by the weighted total average costs per patient completing cardiac rehabilitation (£486; see Table 30).

These estimated budget figures were then used to explore how coverage could be increased if a different configuration of cardiac rehabilitation services were provided. An estimate was made of the number of patients that could be treated if rehabilitation services were entirely provided in centres with three to five key staff (as in group 2, see above) or in a different scenario, in centres with two or fewer key staff (as in group 3). In

addition, an estimate was made of the necessary budget increase to provide cardiac rehabilitation to all potentially eligible patients using data from the analysis presented in Chapter 3. This estimation was undertaken by assuming that, first, cardiac rehabilitation would be uniformly provided in group 2 centres and, second, cardiac rehabilitation would be uniformly provided in group 3 centres.

This study also explored how additional funding could increase coverage. If unit costs per patient fall as the number of patients completing the rehabilitation programme rises (i.e. centres experience economies of scale), additional funding will imply that the number of extra patients treated is higher than proportionate. A possible association between staffing costs per patient and the number of patients treated was, therefore, examined. First, the log-transformed costs and log-transformed numbers of patients were plotted, as both variables have a log-normal distribution. Secondly, a simple log-linear regression model was used to estimate the relationship between costs per patient, as the dependent variable, and the annual number of patients completing the rehabilitation programme, as the independent variable. An additional model was estimated, controlling for numbers of staff employed on cardiac rehabilitation. The regression coefficient for number of patients in these log-linear regression

TABLE 31 Estimated budget attributable to cardiac rehabilitation by country (2000/01 prices)

	England	Wales	Scotland	Northern Ireland
Estimated no. of patients completing outpatient cardiac rehabilitation ^a	25,700–39,000	2,100–3,500	2,500–4,700	1,000–1,400
Estimated budget attributable to outpatient cardiac rehabilitation	£12,513,000–18,975,000	£1,018,000–1,683,000	£1,222,000–2,276,000	£487,000–658,000
^a Numbers were estimated by using information from the BACR/BHF survey for 2000. Data for non-responding centres were imputed by IQR for the relevant country.				

TABLE 32 Estimated impact of a change in service configuration given current budget

	England	Wales	Scotland	Northern Ireland
Estimated no. of patients completing outpatient cardiac rehabilitation in 2000 (current service provision)	25,700–39,000	2,100–3,500	2,500–4,700	1,000–1,400
Estimated no. of patients able to be treated with a group 2 type service (i.e. three to five key staff) without expanding budget	26,100–44,200	2,400–3,900	2,800–5,300	1,100–1,500
Estimated no. of additional patients if all treated with a group 2 type service (based on the midpoint of the ranges reported above)	4,300	400	500	200
% increase in coverage	13	13	13	13
Estimated no. of patients able to be treated with a group 3 type service (i.e. two or fewer key staff) without expanding budget	36,400–55,100	3,000–4,900	3,600–6,600	1,400–1,900
Estimated no. of additional patients if all treated with a group 3 type service (based on the midpoint of the ranges reported above)	13,400	1,100	1,500	500
% increase in coverage	41	41	41	41

models measures the elasticity of the cost per patient with respect to the number of patients completing the programme, that is, the percentage change in costs for a given percentage change in number of patients.

Results

The estimated budgets attributable to cardiac rehabilitation by country are shown in *Table 31*. The current budget was estimated to be approximately £12.5–19.0 million in England, £1.2–2.3 million in Scotland, £1.0–1.7 million in Wales and £0.4–0.7 million in Northern Ireland. Overall, this would result in a budget estimate of £15.2–23.6 million for outpatient cardiac rehabilitation for the whole of the UK.

Table 32 shows the estimated impact of a change in service configuration for two different scenarios by country. It was estimated that approximately 5,300

more patients across the UK could be treated if the service were provided in cardiac rehabilitation centres with the staffing level of those in the 'group 2' sample. This corresponds to a 13% increase in coverage compared with the current situation. If services were provided with cardiac rehabilitation centres with low staffing levels (group 3), approximately 16,490 more patients could be treated, corresponding to a 41% increase in coverage compared with the current situation.

As shown in Chapter 3, around 266,800 patients were potentially eligible for cardiac rehabilitation in England in 2000. Assuming that group 2 services were uniformly provided, an annual budget of approximately £115 million would be required for the provision of cardiac rehabilitation to all patients. This represents a 630% increase in the estimated current budget attributable to cardiac rehabilitation.

TABLE 33 Regression model for staff costs per patient completing cardiac rehabilitation (ln costs)

	β	SE	95% CI	p
Constant	5.97	0.643	4.647 to 7.286	<0.0001
ln no. of patients	-0.10	0.143	-0.94 to 0.193	0.49
$R^2 = 0.02, n = 30, F = 0.49, p = 0.49$				

TABLE 34 Regression model for staff costs per patient completing cardiac rehabilitation (ln costs), controlling for group

	β	SE	95% CI	p
Constant	7.33	0.592	6.11 to 8.55	<0.0001
ln no. of patients	-0.245	0.117	-0.488 to -0.002	0.048
Group 1	-	-	-	-
Group 2	-0.733	0.335	-1.422 to -0.042	0.038
Group 3	-1.489	0.340	-2.190 to -0.788	<0.0001
$R^2 = 0.44, n = 30, F = 6.66, p < 0.002$				

Using a more limited criterion of need, namely, considering only patients with acute myocardial infarction, unstable angina, CAGB and PTCA as eligible, an annual budget of approximately £56 million would be required for the provision of cardiac rehabilitation, an increase of 260% in the current budget.

By extending the provision of cardiac rehabilitation using staffing configurations of group 3 services, an approximate annual budget of between £45 and £92 million would be required for treating all potentially eligible patients. This represents a 200–500% increase in the current annual budget attributable to cardiac rehabilitation.

Figure 5 shows the relationship between annual numbers of patients completing cardiac rehabilitation and the staff costs per patients. It suggests that the costs fall as the annual patient throughput increases. Figure 6 shows the same relationship but stratified by group.

The simple regression showed no significant relationship between staff costs per patient and numbers of patients completing cardiac rehabilitation (Table 33).

Further exploration of the data, making allowance for the differing staffing patterns in groups 1–3, showed a clear relationship between costs and numbers completing cardiac rehabilitation within each group. The results of this model including group as an independent dummy variable are

shown in Table 34. The equations for predicting the staff costs per patient completing cardiac rehabilitation are as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Group 1: ln (cost per patient) =} & 7.33 - 0.245 \ln (\text{number of patients}) \\ \text{Group 2: ln (cost per patient) =} & 7.33 - 0.245 \ln (\text{number of patients}) - 0.733 \\ \text{Group 3: ln (cost per patient) =} & 7.33 - 0.245 \ln (\text{number of patients}) - 1.489 \end{aligned}$$

This suggests that cardiac rehabilitation centres experience economies of scale when different levels of multidisciplinary staff input, as in our defined groups, are taken into account. The cost per patient falls as the annual number of treated patients rises, although this was dependent on controlling for the multidisciplinary staff running the programme. Roughly, a 1% increase in the number of patients completing the programme leads to a 0.245% fall in the staff cost per patient completing the programme. This means that increasing patient throughput, by increased funding, may result in greater opportunity to increase coverage than might be expected.

Discussion

The results of this analysis suggest a weighted average staffing cost of £354 and a weighted total average cost of £486 per patient successfully completing a cardiac rehabilitation programme (2000/01 prices). Although previous studies have presented figures for the cost of cardiac

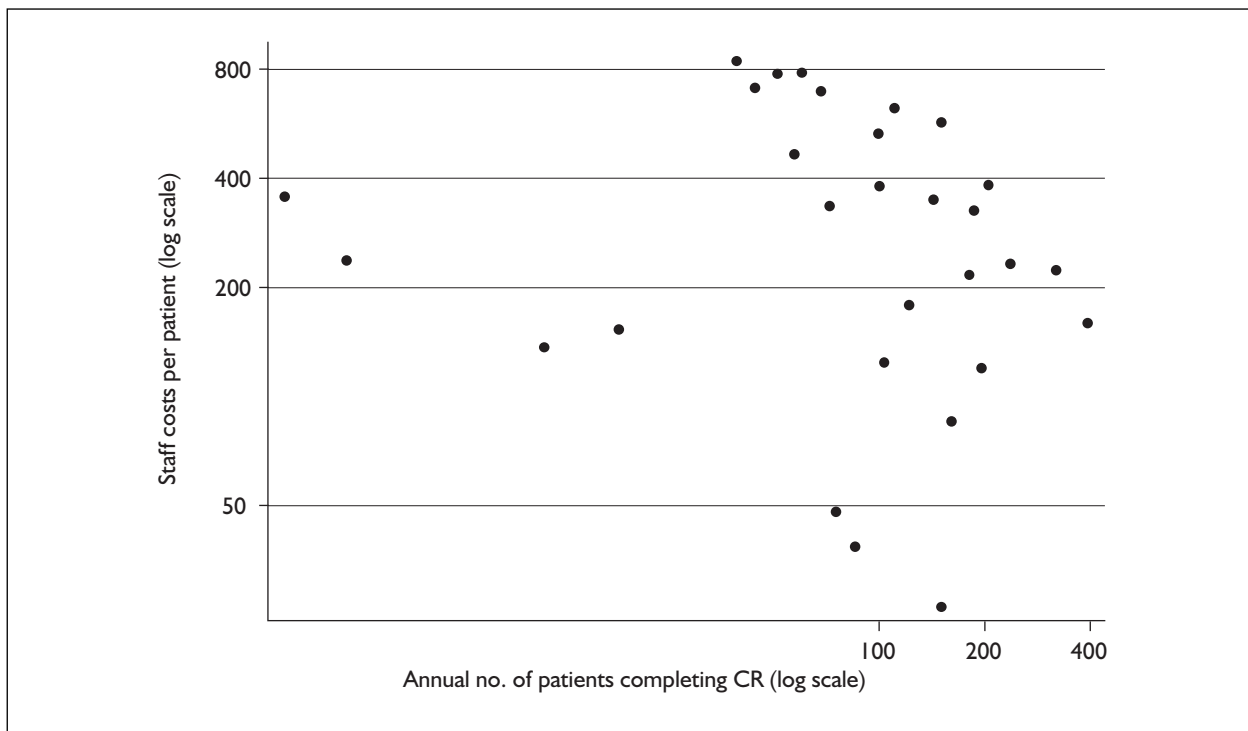


FIGURE 5 Relationship between size (as measured by annual throughput of patients) and unit cost (staff costs) of cardiac rehabilitation programmes (all centres)

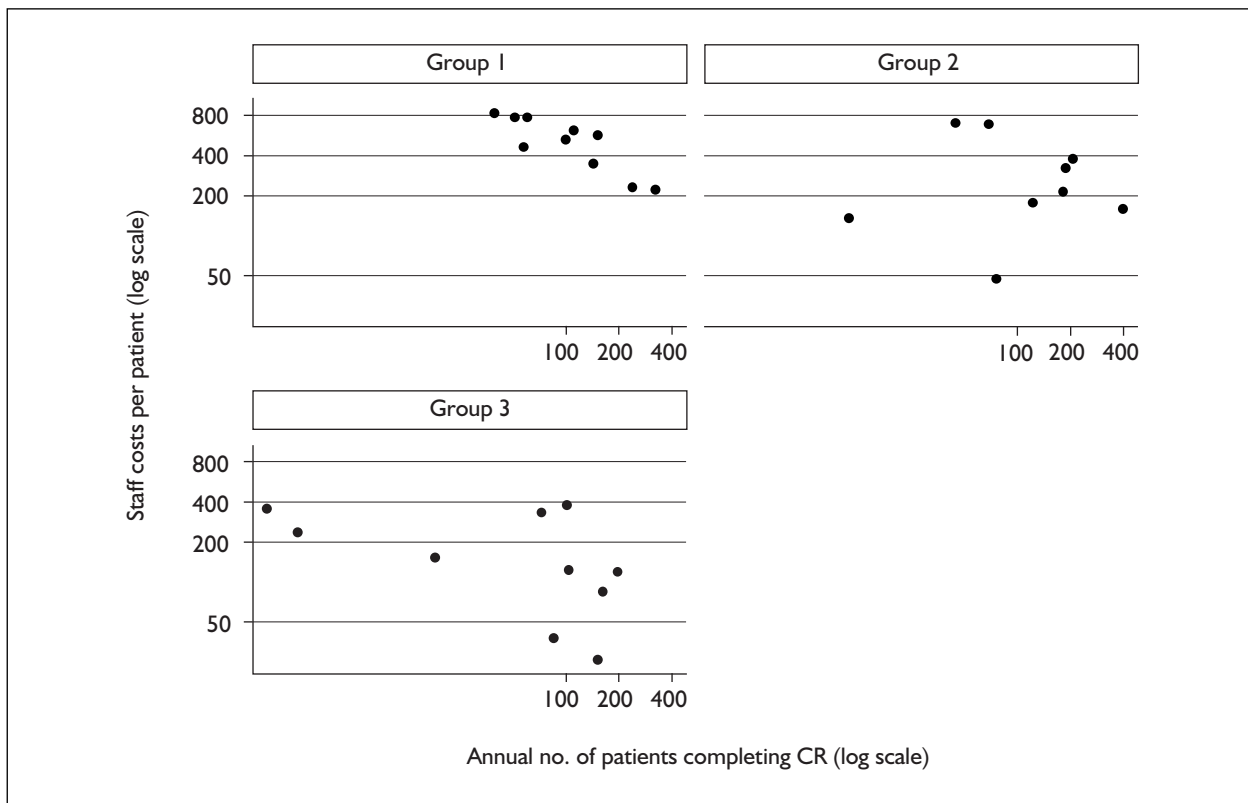


FIGURE 6 Relationship between size (as measured by annual throughput of patients) and unit cost (staff costs) of cardiac rehabilitation programmes by group

rehabilitation in the UK, they have been less comprehensive in their cost estimates. Nonetheless, the present findings are consistent with their findings, which suggested an average cost of cardiac rehabilitation per treated patient in the region of £200–£400.^{25,79–82}

For example, Gray and colleagues⁸⁰ estimated a cost of £371 per patient completing a cardiac rehabilitation programme (median £223; 1994 prices). This was based on a sample of 16 cardiac rehabilitation centres in England and Wales, but their estimate excluded non-staff costs and contributions by non-specifically funded staff. Average staff costs of £350–425 (2001 prices) were estimated by the Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network (SIGN) guideline development group, assuming 500 referred patients per year and a 90% uptake.² Based on the funding information given by 37 centres in the most recent BACR/BHF survey, Evans and co-workers²⁵ reported a cost of £50–712 (median £256) per patient completing cardiac rehabilitation.

By using information from the BACR/BHF survey and an additional questionnaire, all staff contributions could be measured and valued. The analysis shows that centres with higher levels of staff mix provide a more expensive service per patient treated than centres that employ fewer types of key staff. This is due to a longer duration of cardiac rehabilitation programmes offered by centres in group 1 (29 hours per patient) compared with the average duration of programmes offered by centres in group 2 (24 hours) and group 3 (20 hours), as well as the higher weekly staff input into programmes offered by centres with more types of key staff. This did not correspond with higher numbers of patients entering and completing the programmes. Thus, patients treated in centres with a higher level of multidisciplinary received the most intense rehabilitation programme in terms of the duration of the programme and staff/patient ratio. Although the heterogeneity of cardiac rehabilitation services has long been acknowledged, evidence is lacking to suggest that programmes with a higher level of multidisciplinary offer improved patient outcomes. Such services may not even represent higher service quality; for example, adherence was lower in the most multidisciplinary and intensive services.

This analysis has some limitations. Ideally, information on non-staff related costs such as direct overheads and capital costs should have been obtained from each rehabilitation centre in the sample. From a practical point of view, this was not

feasible. The advantage of this study is the size of the sample, which allowed the cost differences due to different staff configurations to be explored in detail.

The costs of equipment were also included, based on current recommendations from the BACR. However, this list did not include equipment for undertaking ECG-exercise testing. Cardiac rehabilitation centres may carry out exercise testing before and after cardiac rehabilitation to assess patients and will, therefore, incur higher costs. Annual costs of equipment (treadmills, consumables for ECG, etc.) have been estimated to account for approximately £25,000 (Sally Turner, Alton Cardiac Rehabilitation Centre: personal communication, 2 December 2002).

Some extrapolations had to be made to calculate the total numbers of patients completing a programme, because not all centres replied to the survey and provided comprehensive activity data. This is possibly due to their lack of automated systems to extract these data, lack of audit facilities or being in the process of installing systems to collect audit data to satisfy the requirements of the NSF-CHD. However, the authors believe that their estimate of an annual budget attributable to cardiac rehabilitation of £15.2–23.6 million for the whole of the UK is a refined update of previous budget estimates, for example, £8–34 million by Taylor and Kirby⁸¹ based on a converted US cost estimate.

The results of the simple budget analysis show that by providing a service as offered in group 3 centres, the overall service provision could be increased by approximately 40% with current funding. Providing cardiac rehabilitation as offered in group 2 centres, which represents the average cardiac service in the UK, could lead to an approximately 13% increase in coverage. This could be of importance given limited resources and the large extent of unmet need, as shown in Chapter 3.

The resource implications for extending cardiac rehabilitation to a greater proportion of eligible patients and to other groups of patients as recommended by the NSF-CHD are not clear. Only a minority of centres, as reported in Chapter 4, state that they have spare capacity. It is also not obvious whether the difference between the number of referred and enrolled patients represents spare capacity, as many centres have waiting lists that restrict the number of patients receiving treatment. Therefore, the extension of cardiac rehabilitation may require extra resources. The costs of these resources will be dependent on

local factors such as current provision of staff, the opportunity costs of extending the role of existing staff employed in other areas, existing (spare) capacity and facilities and, if not available, the costs of hiring facilities, for example in community sport centres.

This study confirms the finding that cardiac rehabilitation centres experience economies of scale, as first reported by Gray and colleagues.⁸⁰ However, this was only apparent when multidisciplinary of staff input, as defined by the three groups, was explicitly taken into account. This finding suggests that any budget increase could lead to a more than proportionate improvement in coverage of cardiac rehabilitation services.

This analysis considers only the direct costs of cardiac rehabilitation. Future assessments of the cost-effectiveness of cardiac rehabilitation need to consider the future savings associated with reduced subsequent healthcare utilisation related to cardiac disease. The inclusion of future costs related to successfully rehabilitated patients living longer and requiring health services unrelated to cardiac disease is more controversial. Also to be considered are the future productivity gains associated, for example, with earlier return to work. The inclusion of costs incurred by patients such as expenses for travelling and special clothing will depend on the perspective from which the costs analysis is conducted. A full economic evaluation requires the comparison of the resource use changes with improved health consequences, that is, the effectiveness of cardiac rehabilitation.

Conclusions

The average costs of cardiac rehabilitation to the health service per patient successfully completing

a cardiac rehabilitation programme are about £350 (staff costs only) and £490 (total costs) per patient. Outpatient cardiac rehabilitation represents an NHS cost of between £15.2 and 23.6 million in the UK. Cost variation across centres is partly explained by a higher dose of intervention in terms of duration and staff/patient ratio. There is a need to quantify the heterogeneity of services in terms of benefits. Trials comparing complex multidisciplinary rehabilitation with simpler regimens require evaluation of their costs and effectiveness.

If all services were modelled on the most common configuration of staffing (group 2), approximately 13% more patients could be treated with the same annual budget, but if the simpler group 3 services were to be uniformly provided, 40% more patients could be treated. The levels of need for cardiac rehabilitation, using the more modest criteria of need (see Chapter 3), suggest that, at best, fewer than 30–43% of eligible patients are referred and, of these, about half join cardiac rehabilitation programmes. This suggests that the capacity to increase provision by 40% within current budgets would meet between 42 and 60% of the population need for treatment.

Higher funding would be needed to increase provision to match need and to meet NSF-CHD targets. An approximate 260–630% increase in the annual current budget is required, to treat all potentially eligible patients depending on the staffing configurations of the cardiac rehabilitation programme. However, increased spending could lead to a more than proportionate increase in coverage. Further work is required to examine the best ways of using any increased funding, as it is likely that the potential of different services to increase capacity will vary markedly, and the associated costs will differ if, for example, new capital schemes are required.

Chapter 12

Conclusions

Outpatient cardiac rehabilitation should be available to patients with a range of cardiovascular diagnoses and after revascularisation procedures, but previous studies have shown that uptake is low, particularly in some specific patient groups. While many barriers to participation have been described, the effectiveness of interventions to improve uptake and adherence has not been assessed by systematic review. Furthermore, the cost implications of interventions to improve uptake and adherence and of increasing overall provision to meet total population need have not been estimated. Conclusions presented here are based around the objectives set in Chapter 2.

What is the population need for cardiac rehabilitation?

Population need for cardiac rehabilitation in the UK in 1999–2000 was assessed from hospital discharge statistics in England, Wales and Northern Ireland. The researchers were unable to use equivalent data for Scotland.

Two criteria for eligibility for cardiac rehabilitation were considered: patients with acute myocardial infarction, unstable angina or following a revascularisation procedure; and all patients discharged alive with a primary diagnosis of ischaemic heart disease or following revascularisation. The former, more conservative estimate of need, identified nearly 146,000 patients per year as eligible for cardiac rehabilitation in England, Wales and Northern Ireland. The latter gives a considerably larger estimate of 299,000 patients per year, but includes patients with chronic ischaemic heart disease, some of whom may be considered eligible for participation in some programmes and who may benefit from rehabilitation. Although these patients are not currently specified as immediate priorities for cardiac rehabilitation, for example in the NSF-CHD, many may be deserving of rehabilitation or appropriate lifestyle advice and modification as services develop.

Who is not receiving cardiac rehabilitation?

To estimate the level of cardiac rehabilitation provision, data from the 2000 BACR/BHF survey of cardiac rehabilitation centres were combined with hospital discharge statistics. The overall response rate of survey centres was 67% and IQRs were imputed for non-responders. This gave a range of estimates of numbers of patients referred to and joining a cardiac rehabilitation programme.

It was estimated that in England about 53% (range 45–67%), in Wales about 72% (range 59–81%) and in Northern Ireland about 30% (range 25–36%) of acute myocardial infarction, unstable angina and revascularisation patients were referred to cardiac rehabilitation in 2000. The proportions of patients joining a programme were about 33% (range 27–41%), 40% (range 38–46%) and 22% (range 18–25%), respectively. As this considers only the limited eligibility criteria as the denominator it reflects an overestimate if centres provided services to other patient groups. Applying the less inclusive eligibility criteria of any ischaemic heart disease or revascularisation, it was estimated that in England about 26%, in Wales about 32% and in Northern Ireland about 14% of patients were referred to cardiac rehabilitation in 2000. The corresponding figures for patients joining a programme were 16%, 18% and 11%, respectively. A survey of rehabilitation centres suggested that an average of about 63% of all patients referred joined a programme and that about 48% of referrals completed a course.

There appeared to be variation in service provision across the UK, with a higher proportion of eligible patients referred to and joining cardiac rehabilitation programmes in England and Wales than in Northern Ireland. Since the need for rehabilitation is substantially greater in Northern Ireland (and Scotland), this represents a considerable disparity between uptake and need.

The data demonstrate that many eligible patients who may derive benefit are not referred or invited,

do not respond to invitation, or do not adhere to cardiac rehabilitation. Some of the shortfall in referral and invitation may be explained by the clinical eligibility criteria used in selecting patients as appropriate for cardiac rehabilitation. This selection is mainly by health status before discharge. From the clinical exclusion data in an RCT with minimal exclusions, about 81% of patients were identified as eligible for rehabilitation after myocardial infarction and, although slightly lower than the 85% stated in the NSF-CHD, this is a reasonable overall estimate. The remaining 19% of patients were considered unsuitable for outpatient rehabilitation, mainly on the basis of co-morbidity or frailty. This is not to say that these patients may not gain materially from secondary prevention or individually selected components of cardiac rehabilitation. Indeed, many eligible and included patients may only be suited to, and gain benefit from, specific aspects of rehabilitation.

The definition of eligibility is important. In an RCT setting with minimal exclusions and appropriate documentation the eligibility criteria are clearly defined. In a non-trial setting the possibility arises that eligibility can be flexible and take on a role in rationing services. This may, in part, explain the extra tier of exclusion observed within the randomised trial context in that, after referral, coordinators tended to exclude older patients and those with more severe presentation of coronary heart disease from outpatient cardiac rehabilitation, possibly on the basis of an exercise test. Clearly, frail, elderly people and those with co-morbidity are capable of benefiting from rehabilitation, as shown by trials of geriatric assessment and rehabilitation units, and everyday practice within the NHS. The nature of rehabilitation for such patients may be less intensive than for other patients and may involve attendance at a day hospital. Some linkage between cardiac rehabilitation and health services for elderly people would be desirable to ensure that appropriate rehabilitation is available to all, regardless of age.

Under-represented groups

In the national survey and in the RCT, uptake of cardiac rehabilitation tended to be lower in older patients than in younger age groups. However, having attended one class there was no evidence to suggest that older patients were more likely to drop out of rehabilitation. Women were less likely to attend in both settings, but in the trial this was largely explained by the increased age of women at presentation. It is not possible to draw firm

conclusions about the attendance of black or Asian groups as national database data were incomplete for coding of ethnicity, and in the survey of rehabilitation centres numbers referred to and attending cardiac rehabilitation tended to be low.

Accessibility of information

Gathering data on patient need, eligibility and rehabilitation activity was problematic. To simplify the process and make estimates more precise, national analysis of audit data would be preferable to ad hoc surveys. Unfortunately, audit was found to be underdeveloped in cardiac rehabilitation. The survey in England showed an uncoordinated approach to data collection and audit, with considerable variation in methods and content. With the standards set out in the NSF-CHD, reproducible and comparable methods should be in place, but little evidence was found to suggest that this was so. The use of modern medical records systems and gathering of data with a national and policy-driven standardised tool are desirable. This would allow assessment of all stages of the rehabilitation process, starting with the original coronary heart disease diagnosis or procedure, and would include information on possible causes of under-representation.

Some programme coordinators reported that direct referral systems from surgery and clinics were in place aimed at improving uptake of cardiac rehabilitation. The use of methods to promote direct referral suggests that audit can bridge the gap between inpatient care and outpatient cardiac rehabilitation.

What is the effectiveness of different methods of improving uptake and of differential targeting of cardiac rehabilitation?

Barriers to participation in outpatient cardiac rehabilitation

Interviews with patients randomised to attend rehabilitation in a trial confirmed commonly perceived reasons for non-attendance at cardiac rehabilitation. The main reasons for non-attendance or dropout were: lack of interest, illness, transport difficulties, scheduling and care of dependants. These responses suggest that some aspects of non-attendance are amenable to intervention by addressing issues of motivation, perceived relevance of cardiac rehabilitation to future well being, co-morbidities, the site and time of sessions, transport and arrangement of care for dependents.

Interventions used in cardiac rehabilitation centres

The survey of cardiac rehabilitation coordinators found a high level of awareness of the problem of low uptake. Sixty-six percent of services that responded indicated that they had implemented measures to improve attendance. Interventions appropriate to all patients included follow-up telephone calls, personalised invitation, home visits and free transport. More specific interventions for under-represented groups (women, the elderly, ethnic minorities, patients with heart failure or angina) included individualised classes, buddy systems and inclusion in the programme of a spouse or relative.

Many interventions were reported and some represent the application of common-sense methods. Nevertheless, studies to show the sustainable effectiveness of interventions are necessary if the long-term benefits of interventions are to be confirmed and the value of interventions disseminated more widely. The possibility exists that a common-sense intervention may have a negative effect on attendance. For example, patients collected last and returned home first may value free hospital transport as part of the overall rehabilitation package, whereas patients subjected to an extended journey and long transit times may find this an inconvenience that influences subsequent participation.

Although the RCT represents the gold standard in the evaluation of new interventions, this may be considered inappropriate by a cardiac rehabilitation professional attempting to provide services to all patients. As a possible alternative to RCTs, improvement in uptake attributable to an intervention may be identified by audit. However, reproducible audit procedures need to be in place first.

Systematic review of the literature

To identify studies of interventions with the aim of improving uptake and adherence to cardiac rehabilitation, three systematic reviews were carried out. The issue of improving uptake and adherence was split into three major questions: how can recruitment to cardiac rehabilitation be improved (uptake); how can patients' adherence to cardiac rehabilitation and maintenance of lifestyle changes be improved; and how can professionals be encouraged to comply with guidelines and good practice? These were designed to identify interventions to improve all aspects of referral and invitation, uptake and adherence to cardiac rehabilitation.

The comprehensive systematic review of literature covered a large range of databases and handsearches. Studies identified were published in journals, theses and conference abstracts. It was disappointing to find that nearly half of the studies reporting potentially valuable methods to promote cardiac rehabilitation were found only in the grey literature, with little opportunity for access by interested healthcare professionals. Sharing of information is essential if effective methods are to be implemented. Of the studies identified, a minority were RCTs.

Although some studies that looked at altering patient behaviour were identified, there was very little literature on interventions aimed at encouraging healthcare professional compliance with guidelines or good practice regarding invitation and support of patients' cardiac rehabilitation. As the conduct of the healthcare professional is central in the recruitment of patients to cardiac rehabilitation it seems logical to study interventions relating to professional education, compliance with guidelines and coordination of services. In one RCT a multifaceted approach to transfer of care from hospital to general practice was associated with increased cardiac rehabilitation uptake. However, the relative importance of one specific aspect of the intervention directly concerning professional compliance could not be evaluated.

The systematic literature review identified some interventions to help improve patient uptake of cardiac rehabilitation. Invitation letters, pamphlets, telephone calls and home visits may be used to convey a motivational message. Trained lay volunteers providing support to patients in the period before an outpatient programme may facilitate subsequent attendance at cardiac rehabilitation.

Following successful recruitment of patients to cardiac rehabilitation it is important that patients adhere to the programme and maintain any associated lifestyle changes. Methods based on improvements in self-efficacy and behavioural feedback showed promise in improving and sustaining risk factor management.

Possible interventions suggested in the literature, but which have not been evaluated in trials, were identified as areas for future research. These were based on observations in trials, reviews and patient interviews. Interventions relating to professional compliance include education of healthcare professionals on the benefits of cardiac

rehabilitation, appointment of a programme director, use of clinical pathways with explicit patient eligibility criteria, flexibility in programme start dates, flexibility in programme times, and home visiting to provide continuity of care. Suggested interventions to improve uptake include early support and planning postdischarge by healthcare professionals, adaptation of services for under-represented groups, use of community facilities, provision of services in a community setting, and for motivated patients with appropriately supervised delivery, home-based methodologies. Unevaluated interventions to improve adherence include further approaches based on self-efficacy, including demonstrations of behaviours by previous patients, which may be of particular value in promoting dietary change. Alternative forms of exercise or diet modification may help to improve adherence, and this may be especially useful for women, elderly people and minority ethnic groups. The use of different forms of rehabilitation such as home-based programmes may be acceptable in highly motivated patients with less severe coronary heart disease.

The identification of so many interventions in need of evaluation suggests that there is value in the study of factors determining attendance. Well-conducted qualitative studies in providers and particularly in patients may be useful in identifying the attitudes, beliefs and values associated with successful cardiac rehabilitation. Since this review was completed, a qualitative study of factors influencing enrolment in cardiac rehabilitation has been published.²⁰¹ This study suggested that physician recommendation, encouragement from family and friends, and access to transportation are important factors in promoting enrolment.

What is the potential budget impact of increasing uptake of cardiac rehabilitation using different uptake interventions?

Service duration and configuration

The effectiveness of different intensities and multidisciplinary of cardiac rehabilitation is not known. Systematic reviews include a wide range of interventions both more and less intense than current UK recommendations, but to date no attempt has been made to stratify effectiveness by service model.

The BACR/BHF survey of cardiac rehabilitation across the UK showed wide variations in intensity,

programme content and staffing. However, the mean levels of service provision suggest that an 8-week programme with 2 hours per week of exercise training, 1 hour per week of education and half an hour per week of psychological intervention is typical.

In the UK, three service configurations were identified, based on numbers of different types of key staff. A service involving three to five key staff is most commonly provided, with 73% of programmes reporting this configuration. Few programmes had lower staffing levels, but 20% of programmes had more than five key staff. Until evidence is available on the effectiveness of more intensive interventions it seems reasonable to base projections on the moderate service configuration with its multidisciplinary structure.

Costs of cardiac rehabilitation

The average costs of cardiac rehabilitation to the health service per patient successfully completing a programme were estimated at about £350 (staff costs only) and £490 (total costs) at 2000/01 prices. In the UK this equates to an NHS cost of between £15.2 and £23.6 million. This range represents the uncertainty in identifying the total number of patients receiving cardiac rehabilitation in the UK. The lower figure is the number of patients completing a programme in centres who responded to the BACR/BHF survey, and the higher figure is an extrapolation of identified service levels to all known UK programmes. As the BACR/BHF database is an established and well-respected resource, it is likely that the non-responding centres are more recent and smaller programmes. Consequently, an overall UK cost estimate greater than £15.2 million but less than £23.6 million is probable. Again, this highlights the importance of consistent national audit in guiding the provision of cardiac rehabilitation.

A minority of centres reported spare capacity and this would have only a small potential impact on overall provision. On the basis of unmet need identified in the survey and applying the conservative eligibility criteria of acute myocardial infarction, unstable angina and revascularisation, it was estimated that a budget increase of approximately 260% would be required, representing an overall annual budget of about £56 million at 2000/01 prices. Clearly, this would be considerably greater if more than five key staff were included in the programme and the eligibility criteria were extended to all patients with a discharge diagnosis of coronary heart disease or heart failure, or following

revascularisation. This may imply a budget increase of up to 630% and an annual budget of approximately £115 million.

Other costs may be involved in the extension of provision, depending on local factors such as current levels of staffing, the opportunity costs of extending the role of existing staff, existing spare capacity and facilities and, if not available, the costs of hiring facilities, for example in community sport centres. Conversely, economies of scale may serve to reduce the extra budget required.

Additional costs of increasing uptake and adherence

Order of magnitude costs of interventions to improve uptake and adherence with cardiac rehabilitation may be inferred and these suggest a wide range of implied costs. Motivational interventions could replace existing methods of

invitation at minimal cost, and the incorporation of motivational elements into an established home-visiting schedule may have little further implication for resources. The use of lay volunteers in promoting uptake of cardiac rehabilitation is likely to be more costly, with extensive training requirements and travel costs. Similarly, the introduction of liaison nurse coordination of transfer of care would be costly if recruitment of new staff was required. However, it may serve to define the role of the established liaison nurse in supporting patients and other healthcare professionals and coordination of postdischarge care. Strategies aimed at improving self-management could be incorporated into outpatient cardiac rehabilitation sessions, and training of rehabilitation staff in lifestyle evaluation may serve to formalise assessment and procedures already in place in cardiac rehabilitation.

Chapter 13

Key findings

Implications for healthcare

- Provision of outpatient cardiac rehabilitation in the UK is well below the NSF-CHD goal of 85% of patients with acute myocardial infarction and revascularisation being offered outpatient cardiac rehabilitation.
- Information on referral to and uptake of cardiac rehabilitation is incomplete, with widely varying estimates of provision, particularly in under-represented groups. Little is known about the capacity of cardiac rehabilitation centres to increase provision.
- There is an uncoordinated approach to audit data collection.
- Reasons reported by patients for non-attendance are amenable to intervention, but few interventions have been formally evaluated.
- Many interventions aimed at improving patient uptake, adherence and professional compliance with guidelines and good practice have been proposed, but few have been formally evaluated.
- Motivational communications and trained lay volunteers may help to improve uptake of cardiac rehabilitation.
- Self-management techniques may help to promote and sustain lifestyle changes associated with cardiac rehabilitation.
- Qualitative studies in providers and patients may identify attitudes, beliefs and values associated with cardiac rehabilitation.
- Information on costs of interventions is frequently not reported.
- Experience of low-cost interventions and good practice exists within many cardiac rehabilitation centres.

- Increased provision of outpatient cardiac rehabilitation will require additional resources.

Recommendations for research and development

- Trials comparing the cost-effectiveness of comprehensive multidisciplinary rehabilitation with simpler outpatient programmes.
- Economic and patient preference studies of the effects of different methods of using increased funding for cardiac rehabilitation, and evaluations of the impact of any increased funding.
- Evaluation of a range of interventions and good practice (including self-management techniques, motivational communication and the use of trained lay volunteers) to promote attendance in all patients and under-represented groups.
- Development of standardised audit methods in the context of modern records systems, appropriate training for dedicated staff and dialogue between service contributors. Standardisation of criteria for patient eligibility, regular and comprehensive data collection to estimate the need for and provision of cardiac rehabilitation.
- Identification of further areas for intervention through qualitative studies.
- Extension of low-cost interventions and good practice in rehabilitation.
- Regular updated systematic review of literature relating to uptake and adherence to cardiac rehabilitation to include literature not readily available to providers and non-UK studies.



Acknowledgements

We are grateful to Judith Jolliffe, Jo Coast, Karl Karsch, David Thompson and Bob Lewin for their involvement in the early phase of the project. We also thank Hugh Bethell and Sally Turner for allowing us access to the British Association for Cardiac Rehabilitation/British Heart Foundation survey data; Roy Maxwell and Davidson Ho (HES), Farzana Nadeem (PEDW) and Ciara Kennedy (HIS) for supplying data on population need; and the staff of rehabilitation centres that contributed additional survey data, audits and relevant information.

Contributors to survey of audit activity in UK cardiac rehabilitation centres

We are grateful for the assistance of rehabilitation and audit staff from the following centres: Katrina Creedon (Birmingham Heartlands and Solihull NHS Trust), Claire Breerton-Worsman (Bradford Hospitals NHS Trust), Gillian Matthews (Cornwall Partnership NHS Trust), Ashley Davidson (East Somerset NHS Trust), Mark Giles (Gloucestershire Hospitals NHS Trust), Alison Child (Guy's and St Thomas' Hospital NHS Trust), Maureen Barry (Homerton Hospital NHS Trust), Judith Imich (Kings College Hospital NHS Trust), Pat Marley (The Lewisham Hospital NHS Trust), Sheila Ryan (Newham Primary Care Trust), Tony Andrews (North Devon Healthcare NHS Trust), Valerie Nangle (North Middlesex University Hospital Trust), John Outhwaite and Julie Thompson (Plymouth Hospitals NHS Trust), Victoria Sievey (Royal Bournemouth and Christchurch NHS Trust), Alison Brown (Royal Cornwall NHS Trust), Alison Davey (Royal Free Hampstead NHS Trust), Margaret Wicks (Royal United Hospital Bath NHS Trust), Rosalind Leslie (Royal Wolverhampton

NHS Trust), Dee Hannah (St Mary's NHS Trust), Maggie Kelly (Salisbury Health Care NHS Trust), Margaret Pritchard (Sandwell Healthcare NHS Trust), Suzy Young and Lynne Kilner (South Devon Healthcare NHS Trust), Petra Haig (South Warwickshire General Hospitals NHS Trust), Amanda Daniel (United Bristol Healthcare Trust), Mark Walsh (Walsall Hospitals NHS Trust), Brian Coleman (Whipps Cross University Hospital NHS Trust) and Linda Barratt (Worcester Acute Hospitals NHS Trust).

Contributions of authors

Andrew Beswick (Research Associate) contributed to the systematic review, audit and RCT, and prepared the report. Karen Rees (Research Fellow) acted as project coordinator and contributed to the systematic review and survey of UK provision. Ingolf Griebisch (Research Associate) prepared health service costs and population need. Fiona Taylor (Public Health Specialist Trainee) contributed to the systematic review and audit survey. Margaret Burke (Trials Search Coordinator for the Cochrane Heart Group) carried out the literature searches. Robert West (Reader in Epidemiology) contributed to the systematic review and RCT attendance, design and planning. Jackie Victory (Cardiac Rehabilitation Sister) contributed to the audit survey and the UK survey of provision. Jacqueline Brown (MRC Senior Scientist) prepared health service costs. Rod Taylor (Senior Lecturer in Public Health and Epidemiology) worked on the UK survey of provision. Shah Ebrahim (Professor of Epidemiology and Ageing) worked on the systematic review and coordinated the project.



References

1. Feigenbaum MS, Carter E. Cardiac Rehabilitation Services. Health Technology Assessment Report No. 6. DHHS Publication No. PHS 88-3427. Rockville, MD: US. Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, National Centre for Health Services Research and Health Care Technology Assessment; 1987.
2. Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network (SIGN). *Cardiac rehabilitation, a national clinical guideline*. SIGN publication no. 57. Edinburgh: SIGN; 2002.
3. Horgan JH, Bethell H, Carson P, Davidson C, Julian D, Mayou RA, *et al.* Working Party report on cardiac rehabilitation. *Br Heart J* 1992; **67**:412–18.
4. Thompson D, Bowman G, De-Bono D, Hopkins A, editors. *Cardiac rehabilitation: guidelines and audit standards*. London: Royal College of Physicians of London; 1997.
5. Thompson DR, Meddis R. A prospective evaluation of in-hospital counselling for first time myocardial infarction men. *J Psychosomatic Res* 1990; **34**:237–48.
6. Oldridge NB, Guyatt GH, Fischer ME, Rimm AA. Cardiac rehabilitation after myocardial infarction. Combined experience of enrolment in clinical trials. *JAMA* 1988; **260**:945–50.
7. O'Connor GT, Buring JE, Yusuf S, Goldhaber SZ, Olmstead EM, Paffenbarger RS Jr, *et al.* An overview of randomised trials of rehabilitation with exercise after myocardial infarction. *Circulation* 1989; **80**:234–44.
8. Lear SA, Ignaszewski A. Cardiac rehabilitation: a comprehensive review. *Current Controlled Trials in Cardiovascular Medicine* 2001; **2**:221–32.
9. Ades PA. Cardiac rehabilitation and secondary prevention of coronary heart disease. *N Engl J Med* 2001; **345**:892–902.
10. Jolliffe JA, Rees K, Taylor RS, Thompson D, Oldridge N, Ebrahim S. Exercise-based rehabilitation for coronary heart disease (Cochrane Review). In *The Cochrane Library* (Issue 1). Oxford: Update Software; 2002.
11. NHS Centre for Reviews and Dissemination. Cardiac Rehabilitation. *Eff Health Care* 1998; **4**(4).
12. Department of Health. *National Service Framework for Coronary Heart Disease*. London: Department of Health; 2000.
13. Lloyd-Williams F, Mair FS, Leitner M. Exercise training and heart failure: a systematic review of current evidence. *Br J Gen Pract* 2002; **52**:47–55.
14. Wenger NK, Froelicher ES, Kent-Smith L, Ades PA, Berra K, Blumenthal JA, *et al.* Cardiac Rehabilitation. Clinical Practice Guideline No. 17. AHCPR Publication No. 96–0672. Rockville, MD: US Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, Agency for Health Care Policy and Research and the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute; October 1995.
15. National Heart Foundation of New Zealand 2002. Best practice evidence-based guidelines: cardiac rehabilitation. URL: http://www.nzgg.org.nz/library/gl_complete/Cardiac_Rehab/index.cfm. Accessed January 2003.
16. National Heart Forum of Australia 2000. Recommendations for cardiac rehabilitation. URL: http://www.heartfoundation.com.au/prof/index_fr.html. Accessed January 2003.
17. Hall R, More R, Camm J, Swanton H, Gray H, Flint J, *et al.* Fifth report on the provision of services for patients with heart disease. *Heart* 2002; **88** Suppl iii:1–56.
18. National Assembly for Wales. *Tackling CHD in Wales: implementing through evidence*. Cardiff: National Assembly for Wales; 2001.
19. Canadian Association for Cardiac Rehabilitation. *Canadian guidelines for cardiac rehabilitation and cardiovascular prevention*. Winnipeg: Canadian Association for Cardiac Rehabilitation; 1999.
20. Harlan WR, Sandler SA, Lee KL, Lam LC, Mark DB. Importance of baseline functional and socioeconomic factors for participation in cardiac rehabilitation. *Am J Cardiol* 1995; **76**:36–9.
21. Nielsen H. Cardiac rehabilitation after acute myocardial-infarction in the elderly. *Cardiology in the Elderly* 1994; **2**:290–4.
22. Forman DE, Farquhar W. Cardiac rehabilitation and secondary prevention programs for elderly cardiac patients. *Clin Geriatr Med* 2000; **16**:619–29.
23. O'Callaghan WG, Teo KK, Riordan JO, Webb H, Dolphin T, Horgan JH. Comparative response of male and female patients with coronary artery disease to exercise rehabilitation. *Eur Heart J* 1984; **5**:649–51.
24. Cannistra LB, Balady GJ, O'Malley CJ, Weiner DA, Ryan TJ. Comparison of the clinical profile and

- outcome of women and men in cardiac rehabilitation. *Am J Cardiol* 1992;**69**:1274–9.
25. Evans JA, Turner SC, Bethell HJN. Cardiac rehabilitation: are the NSF milestones achievable? *Heart* 2002;**87** Suppl ii:41.
26. Bethell HJN, Turner SC, Evans JA, Rose L. Cardiac rehabilitation in the United Kingdom: how complete is the provision? *J Cardiopulm Rehabil* 2001;**21**:111–15.
27. Melville MR, Packham C, Brown N, Weston C, Gray D. Cardiac rehabilitation: socially deprived patients are less likely to attend but patients ineligible for thrombolysis are less likely to be invited. *Heart* 1999;**82**:373–7.
28. Campbell NC, Grimshaw JM, Rawles JM, Ritchie LD. Cardiac rehabilitation in Scotland: is current provision satisfactory? *J Public Health Med* 1996;**18**:478–80.
29. Pell J, Pell A, Morrison C, Batchford O, Dargie H. Retrospective study of influence of deprivation on uptake of cardiac rehabilitation. *BMJ* 1996;**313**:267–8.
30. Bunker S, McBurney H, Cox H, Jelinek M. Identifying participation rates at outpatient cardiac rehabilitation programs in Victoria, Australia. *J Cardiopulm Rehabil* 1999;**19**:334–8.
31. Grenier O, Cambou JP, Ferrieres J, Danchin N. Secondary prevention in women with acute coronary syndrome in France: results of the PREVENIR survey. *Eur Heart J* 1999;**20** Abstr Suppl:656.
32. Parks D, Allison M, Doughty R, Cunningham L, Ellis CJ. An audit of phase II cardiac rehabilitation at Auckland hospital. *N Z Med J* 2000;**113**:158–61.
33. Thomas RJ, Miller NH, Lamendola C, Berra K, Hedback B, Durstine JL, et al. National Survey on Gender Differences in Cardiac Rehabilitation Programs. Patient characteristics and enrolment patterns. *J Cardiopulm Rehabil* 1996;**16**:402–12.
34. Jackson SA, Anderson RT, Clark L, Colombo K. Increasing participation in cardiac rehabilitation (the Inspire Study). *Circulation* 1998;**98** Suppl 17: I-707.
35. Blackburn GG, Foody JM, Sprecher DL, Park E, Apperson-Hansen C, Pashkow FJ. Cardiac rehabilitation participation patterns in a large, tertiary care center: evidence for selection bias. *J Cardiopulm Rehabil* 2000;**20**:189–95.
36. Thompson DR, Bowman GS, Kitson AL, de Bono DP, Hopkins A. Cardiac rehabilitation services in England and Wales: a national survey. *Int J Cardiol* 1997;**59**:299–304.
37. Bittner V, Sanderson B, Breland J, Green D. Referral patterns to a university-based cardiac rehabilitation program. *Am J Cardiol* 1999;**83**:252–5.
38. Hotta SS. Cardiac rehabilitation programs. Health Technology Assessment Report 1991, No. 6. Rockville, MD: National Center for Health Services Research and Health Care Technology Assessment; 1991.
39. King KM, Humen DP, Teo KK. Cardiac rehabilitation: the forgotten intervention. *Can J Cardiol* 1999;**15**:979–85.
40. Afzal A, Gunda M, Brawner CA, Havstad S, McCullough P, Keteyian SJ. Race and rate of referral to cardiac rehabilitation. *Circulation* 1998;**98** Suppl 17:I-810–1.
41. Mosca L, Han R, Filip J, McGillen C, Rubenfire M. Barriers for physicians to refer to cardiac rehabilitation and impact of a critical care pathway on rates of participation. *Circulation* 1998;**98** Suppl 17:I-811.
42. Bowman GS, Thompson DR, Lewin RJP. Why are patients with heart failure not routinely offered cardiac rehabilitation? *Coronary Health Care* 1998;**2**:187–92.
43. Ades PA, Waldmann ML, McCann WJ, Weaver SO. Predictors of cardiac rehabilitation participation in older coronary patients. *Arch Intern Med* 1992;**152**:1033–5.
44. Gulanick M, Bliley A, Perino B, Keough V. Recovery patterns and lifestyle changes after coronary angioplasty: the patient's perspective. *Heart Lung* 1998;**27**:253–62.
45. Niederhauser HU, Schoch HK. Der alkoholranke in der rehabilitation [The alcoholic patient in rehabilitation]. *Ther Umsch* 1990;**47**:405–11.
46. Young RF, Kahana E. Age, medical advice about cardiac risk reduction, and patient compliance. *J Aging Health* 1989;**1**:121–34.
47. Grubb NR, Simpson C, Fox KAA. Memory function in patients with stable, moderate to severe cardiac failure. *Am Heart J* (online) 2000;**140**:1–5e.
48. Rogers AE, Addington-Hall JM, Aberly AJ, McCoy ASM, Bulpitt C, Coats AJS, et al. Knowledge and communication difficulties for patients with chronic heart failure: qualitative study. *BMJ* 2000;**321**:605–7.
49. Blumenthal JA, Williams RS, Wallace AG, William RB Jr, Needles TL. Physiological and psychological variables predict compliance to prescribed exercise therapy in patients recovering from myocardial infarction. *Psychosom Med* 1982;**44**:519–27.
50. Blood SM, Moulton AW, Capone R, Handshaw KE, O'Sullivan PA. Factors associated with the decision to attend outpatient cardiac rehabilitation

- programs after myocardial-infarction. *Clin Res* 1993;**41**:566A.
51. Pell JP, Morrison CE. Factors associated with low attendance at cardiac rehabilitation. *British Journal of Cardiology* 1998;**5**:152–5.
 52. Schulz DL, McBurney H. Factors which influence attendance at a rural Australian cardiac rehabilitation program. *Coronary Health Care* 2000;**4**:135–41.
 53. Filip J, McGillen C, Mosca L. Patient preferences for cardiac rehabilitation and desired program elements. *J Cardiopulm Rehabil* 1999;**19**:339–43.
 54. McGee HM, Horgan JH. Cardiac rehabilitation programmes: are women less likely to attend? *BMJ* 1992;**305**:283–4.
 55. Rawles JM, Trent RJ, Jennings KP. Women and myocardial infarction: ageism rather than sexism? *Br Heart J* 1995;**73**:87–91.
 56. Jackson D, Daly J, Davidson P, Elliott D, Cameron-Traub E, Wade V, *et al.* Women recovering from first-time myocardial infarction (MI): a feminist qualitative study. *J Adv Nurs* 2000;**32**:1403–11.
 57. Radley A, Grove A, Wright S, Thurston H. Problems of women compared with those of men following myocardial infarction. *Coronary Health Care* 1998;**2**:202–9.
 58. Taylor FC, Victory JJ, Angelini GD. Use of cardiac rehabilitation among patients following coronary artery bypass surgery. *Heart* 2001;**86**:92–3.
 59. Lane D, Carroll D, Ring C, Beevers G, Lip GYH. Predictors of attendance at cardiac rehabilitation after myocardial infarction. *J Psychosom Res* 2001;**51**:497–501.
 60. Tod AM, Wadsworth E, Asif S, Gerrish K. Cardiac rehabilitation: the needs of South Asian cardiac patients. *Br J Nurs* 2001;**10**:1028–33.
 61. Bethell HJN. How to do it: set up a coronary rehabilitation programme. *BMJ* 1988;**297**:120–1.
 62. Ockene IS, Ockene JK. Barriers to lifestyle change, and the need to develop an integrated approach to prevention. *Cardiol Clin* 1996;**14**:159–69.
 63. Oldridge NB. Cardiac rehabilitation exercise programme. Compliance and compliance-enhancing strategies. *Sports Med* 1988;**6**:42–55.
 64. Daly J, Sindone AP, Thompson DR, Hancock K, Chang E, Davidson P. Barriers to participation in and adherence to cardiac rehabilitation programs: a critical literature review. *Prog Cardiovasc Nurs* 2002;**17**:8–17.
 65. Aikman H, McBurney H, Bunker S. Cardiac rehabilitation: the extent, reasons and predictors of patient non-attendance. In *Proceedings of VI World Congress of Cardiac Rehabilitation*. Buenos Aires, Argentina; 1996.
 66. Evenson KR, Fleury J. Barriers to outpatient cardiac rehabilitation participation and adherence. *J Cardiopulm Rehabil* 2000;**20**:241–6.
 67. Dignan MB, Young LD, Crouse JR, King JM. Factors associated with participation in a preventive cardiology service by patients with coronary heart disease. *Southern Medical Association Journal* 1995;**88**:1057–61.
 68. Wiles, R. Patients' perceptions of their heart attack and recovery: the influence of epidemiological 'evidence' and personal experience. *Soc Sci Med* 1998;**46**:1477–86.
 69. Thow M, Isoud P, White M, Robertson I, Keith E, Armstrong G. Uptake and adherence of women post myocardial infarction to phase III cardiac rehabilitation: are things changing? *Coronary Health Care* 2000;**4**:174–8.
 70. Nohara R, Kambara H, Mohiuddin IH, Ono S, Okuda K, Makita S, *et al.* Cardiac sports rehabilitation for patients with ischemic heart disease. *Japanese Circulation Journal* 1990;**54**:1443–50.
 71. Beach EK, Smith A, Luthringer L, Utz SK, Ahrens S, Whitmire V. Self-care limitations of persons after acute myocardial infarction. *App Nurs Res* 1996;**9**:24–8.
 72. Seddon ME, Ayanian JZ, Landrum MB, Cleary PD, Peterson EA, Gahart MT, *et al.* Quality of ambulatory care after myocardial infarction among Medicare patients by type of insurance and region. *Am J Med* 2001;**111**:24–32.
 73. Carlson JJ, Johnson JA, Franklin BA, VanderLaan RL. Program participation, exercise adherence, cardiovascular outcomes, and program cost of traditional versus modified cardiac rehabilitation. *Am J Cardiol* 2000;**86**:17–23.
 74. Young R, Kahana E, Rubenfire M. Preventive health behavior advice. A study with older myocardial infarction patients. *Eval Health Prof* 1987;**10**:394–407.
 75. Missik E. Women and cardiac rehabilitation: accessibility issues and policy recommendations. *Rehabil Nurs* 2001;**26**:141–7.
 76. Thornhill M, Stevens JA. Client perceptions of a rural-based cardiac rehabilitation program: a grounded theory approach. *Aust J Rural Health* 1998;**6**:105–11.
 77. Walentiny C, Siebold C, Wassink S, Emery R, Andreassen R, Nelson R, *et al.* Determinants and potential educational benefits of participation in outpatient cardiac rehabilitation programs post coronary-artery bypass graft-surgery. *Clin Res* 1988;**36**:A327.

78. Kubler, W, Niebauer, J, Kreuzer, J. Kosten/nutzen-relation: Bewertung der stationären und Rehabilitation [Cost-effectiveness: inpatient versus outpatient rehabilitation]. *Z Kardiol* 1994; **83**(Suppl 6):151–8.
79. Turner S. *Basingstoke and Alton Cardiac Rehabilitation Unit: annual report 1993*. Alton, Hants: Alton Health Centre; 1993.
80. Gray AM, Bowman GS, Thompson DR. The cost of cardiac rehabilitation services in England and Wales. *J R Coll Physicians Lond* 1997; **31**: 57–61.
81. Taylor R, Kirby B. Cost implications of cardiac rehabilitation in older patients. *Coron Artery Dis* 1999; **10**:53–6.
82. Osika JS. Cardiac rehabilitation: evaluation of a pilot lay volunteer home visiting service and needs assessment. Part 2 Membership Exam Thesis. London: FPHM; 2001.
83. Davidson C, Reval K, Chamberlain DA, Pentecost B, Parker J. A report of a working group of the British Cardiac Society: cardiac rehabilitation services in the United Kingdom 1992. *Br Heart J* 1995; **73**:201–2.
84. Office for National Statistics. *Key population and vital statistics 1999. Local and health authority areas*. Series VS/PP. London: HMSO; 2001.
85. McKee M, James P. Using routine data to evaluate quality of care in British hospitals. *Med Care* 1997; **35**(Suppl 10):OS102–11.
86. Bethell HJN, Turner SC, Flint EJ, Rose L. The BACR Database of Cardiac Rehabilitation Units in the UK. *Coronary Health Care* 2000; **4**:92–5.
87. Coats AJS, McGee HM, Stokes HC, Thompson DR, editors. *BACR guidelines for cardiac rehabilitation*. Oxford: Blackwell Science; 1995.
88. Lewin RJ, Ingleton R, Newens AJ, Thompson DR. Adherence to cardiac rehabilitation guidelines: a survey of rehabilitation programmes in the United Kingdom. *BMJ* 1998; **316**:1354–5.
89. Hine D. Clinical governance and the Commission for Health Improvement. In West RR, Norris R, editors. *Measurement of clinical performance. Practical approaches in acute myocardial infarction*. London: Clinical Effectiveness and Evaluation Unit, Royal College of Physicians; 2001. pp. 7–15.
90. Scally G, Donaldson LJ. Clinical governance and the drive for quality improvement in the new NHS in England. *BMJ* 1998; **317**:61–5.
91. Johnston G, Crombie IK, Davies HT, Alder EM, Millard A. Reviewing audit: barriers and facilitating factors for effective clinical audit. *Quality in Health Care* 2000; **9**:23–36.
92. Lewin B, Roebuck A, Thompson D. Coronary heart disease national service framework: cardiac rehabilitation – meeting the information needs. Northern & Yorkshire Public Health Observatory Occasional Paper No. 4; April 2002. URL: http://www.nepho.org.uk/index.php?i=11&rs=1#rpt_7. Accessed 23 October 2003.
93. Auditing cardiac rehabilitation: pilot study to be set up. *British Journal of Cardiology* 2003; **10**:256.
94. Georgiou A, Pearson M. The role of health informatics in clinical audit: part of the problem or key to the solution? *J Eval Clin Pract* 2002; **8**:183–8.
95. West RR. 2001. Rehabilitation after acute myocardial infarction: multicentre randomised controlled trial. URL: <http://www.doh.gov.uk/research/rd3/nhsrandd/timeltdprogs/cvd/rm19.htm>. Accessed 18 December 2003.
96. Stokes H, Turner S, Farr A. Cardiac rehabilitation: programme, structure, content, management and administration. In Coats AJS, McGee HM, Stokes HC, Thompson DR, editors. *BACR guidelines for cardiac rehabilitation*. Oxford: Blackwell Science; 1995. pp. 12–39.
97. Song F, Eastwood A, Gilbody S, Duley L, Sutton A. Publication and related biases. *Health Technol Assess* 2000; **4**(10):1–115.
98. Hyde C, Parkes J, Deeks J, Milne R. Systematic review of studies of effectiveness of teaching critical appraisal. UK National R&D Programme: evaluating methods to promote the implementation of R&D. URL: <http://www.bham.ac.uk/arif/SysRevs/TeachCritApp.PDF>. Accessed January 2003.
99. Kunz R, Oxman AD. The unpredictability paradox: review of empirical comparisons of randomised and non-randomised clinical trials. *BMJ* 1998; **317**:1185–90.
100. Clarke M, Oxman AD, editors. *Cochrane Reviewers Handbook 4.1.4* (updated October 2001). In *The Cochrane Library* (Issue 4). Oxford: Update Software; 2001 (updated quarterly).
101. Moher D, Cook DJ, Eastwood S, Olkin I, Rennie D, Stroup DF. Improving the quality of reports of meta-analyses of randomised controlled trials: the QUOROM statement. *Lancet* 1999; **354**:1896–900.
102. Bradley F, Morgan S, Smith H, Mant D. Preventive care for patients following myocardial infarction. *Fam Pract* 1997; **14**:220–6.
103. Jolly K, Bradley F, Sharp S, Smith H, Mant D. Follow-up care in general practice of patients with myocardial infarction or angina pectoris: initial results of the SHIP trial. *Fam Pract* 1998; **15**:548–55.
104. Jolly K, Bradley F, Sharp S, Smith H, Thompson S, Kinmonth AL, *et al*. Randomised controlled trial of follow up care in general practice of patients with myocardial infarction and angina: final results of the Southampton heart integrated care project (SHIP). *BMJ* 1999; **318**:706–11.

105. Wyer SJ. Increasing attendance rates at a cardiac rehabilitation programme using the Theory of Planned Behaviour: an intervention study. PhD thesis. University of Warwick; 2001.
106. Wyer SJ, Earll L, Joseph S, Harrison J, Giles M, Johnston M. Increasing attendance at a cardiac rehabilitation programme: an intervention study using the Theory of Planned Behaviour. *Coronary Health Care* 2001;**5**:154–9.
107. Ajzen I, Madden TJ. Prediction of goal-directed behaviour: attitudes, intentions, and perceived behavioural control. *Journal of Experimental Social Psychology* 1986;**22**:453–74.
108. Hillebrand T, Frodermann H, Lehr D, Wirth A. Vermehrte teilnahme an ambulanten herzgruppen durch poststationäre nachsorge [Increased participation in coronary groups by means of an outpatient care program]. *Herz Kreislauf* 1995;**27**:346–9.
109. Krasemann EO, Busch T. Was kann eine aufklärungsbroschüre bewirken? [What can an informative pamphlet really achieve?]. *Offentl Gesundheitswes* 1988;**50**:96–8.
110. Imich J. Home-based cardiac rehabilitation. *Nursing Times* 1997;**93**(50):48–9.
111. Scott IA, Eyeson-Annan ML, Huxley SL, West MJ. Optimising care of acute myocardial infarction: results of a regional quality improvement project. *J Qual Clin Prac* 2000;**20**:12–19.
112. Pasquali SK, Alexander KP, Lytle BL, Coombs LP, Peterson ED. Testing an intervention to increase cardiac rehabilitation enrollment after coronary artery bypass grafting. *Am J Cardiol* 2001;**88**:1415–16.
113. Keck M, Budde HG, Hamerle A. Medizinische und sozialmedizinische einflussgrossen auf das active nachsorgeverhalten von ahb-patienten [Medical and sociomedical parameters of the participation in coronary training groups]. *Herz Kreislauf* 1991;**23**:163–7.
114. Keck M, Budde HG. Praxis der motivation zur ambulanten herzgruppe [Practice of motivation for out-patient 'heart group']. *Herz Kreislauf* 1996;**28**:311–15.
115. Millar B. Supporters' clubs. *Health Ser J* 1993;**103**:39.
116. Levknecht L, Schriefer J, Schriefer J, Maconis B. Combining case management, pathways, and report cards for secondary cardiac prevention. *Joint Commission Journal on Quality Improvement* 1997;**23**:162–74.
117. Tod AM, Pearson K, McCabe M. Cardiac rehabilitation: integrating primary and secondary care. *Coronary Health Care* 1998;**2**:150–5.
118. Johnson K. Use of telephone follow-up for post-cardiac surgery patients. *Intensive and Critical Care Nursing* 2000;**16**:144–50.
119. McCarney R, Shapley M, Goodwin R, Croft P. The introduction of a routine monitoring system in primary care for patients with a first episode of cardiovascular disease. *J Adv Nurs* 2000;**31**:1376–82.
120. Foresman JE. Phase I referrals to outpatient cardiac rehab programs: are we doing enough? *J Cardiopulm Rehabil* 1997;**17**:341.
121. Mehta RH, Das S, Tsai TT, Nolan E, Kearly G, Eagle KA. Quality improvement initiative and its impact on the management of patients with acute myocardial infarction. *Arch Intern Med* 2000;**160**:3057–62.
122. Kalayi C, Rimmer F, Maxwell M. Improving referral for cardiac rehabilitation – an interface audit. *Journal of Clinical Governance* 1999;**7**:143–5.
123. Caulin-Glaser T, Schmeizel R. Impact of educational initiatives on gender referrals to cardiac rehabilitation. *Journal of Cardiac Rehabilitation* 2000;**20**:302.
124. Suskin N, Wisenberg G, Barnett P, Pellizzari J, Murray-Parsons N. Physician (MD) endorsement improves cardiac rehabilitation (CR) participation. *Journal of Cardiac Rehabilitation* 2000;**20**:306.
125. Campbell NC, Thain J, Deans HG, Ritchie LD, Rawles JM, Squair JL. Secondary prevention clinics for coronary heart disease: randomised trial of effect on health. *BMJ* 1998;**316**:1434–7.
126. Campbell NC, Ritchie LD, Thain J, Deans HG, Rawles JM, Squair JL. Secondary prevention in coronary heart disease: a behavioural trial of nurse led clinics in primary care. *Heart* 1998;**80**:447–52.
127. Feder G, Griffiths C, Eldridge S, Spence M. Effect of postal prompts to patients and general practitioners on the quality of primary care after a coronary event (POST): randomised controlled trial. *BMJ* 1999;**318**:1522–6.
128. Cannistra LB, O'Malley CJ, Balady GJ. Comparison of outcome of cardiac rehabilitation in black women and white women. *Am J Cardiol* 1995;**75**:890–3.
129. Tack BB, Gilliss CL. Nurse-monitored cardiac recovery: a description of the first 8 weeks. *Heart Lung* 1990;**19**:491–9.
130. Hershberger PJ, Robertson KB, Markert RJ. Personality and appointment-keeping adherence in cardiac rehabilitation. *J Cardiopulm Rehabil* 1999;**19**:106–11.
131. DeBusk RF, Haskell WL, Miller NH, Berra K, Taylor CB, Berger WE, et al. Medically directed at-home rehabilitation soon after clinically uncomplicated acute myocardial infarction: a new model for patient care. *Am J Cardiol* 1985;**55**:251–7.
132. Lewin B, Robertson IH, Cay EL, Irving JB, Campbell M. Effects of self-help post-myocardial-infarction rehabilitation on psychological adjustment and use of health services. *Lancet* 1992;**339**:1036–40.

133. Shaw DK. Telemedicine and cardiopulmonary rehabilitation: where do we stand? *J Cardiopulm Rehabil* 1999;**19**:59–61.
134. Ades PA, Pashkow FJ, Fletcher G, Pina IL, Zohman LR, Nestor JR. A controlled trial of cardiac rehabilitation in the home setting using electrocardiographic and voice transtelephonic monitoring. *Am Heart J* 2000;**139**:543–8.
135. Roitman JL, LaFontaine T, Drimmer AM. A new model for risk stratification and delivery of cardiovascular rehabilitation services in the long-term clinical management of patients with coronary artery disease. *J Cardiopulm Rehabil* 1998;**18**:113–23.
136. Bethell HJN, Mullee MA. A controlled trial of community based coronary rehabilitation. *Br Heart J* 1990;**64**:370–5.
137. Contractor A, English R, Salmon R, Leighton R, Willoughby M, Gordon N. Clinical effectiveness of a community-based cardiovascular risk reduction program (Intervent USA) in lower risk patients with coronary artery disease. *J Cardiopulm Rehabil* 2000;**20**:294.
138. Moore SM. Women's views of cardiac rehabilitation programs. *J Cardiopulm Rehabil* 1996;**16**:123–9.
139. Brezinka V, Dusseldorp E, Maes S. Gender differences in psychosocial profile at entry into cardiac rehabilitation. *J Cardiopulm Rehabil* 1998;**18**:445–9.
140. Toobert DJ, Glasgow RE, Nettekoven LA, Brown JE. Behavioral and psychosocial effects of intensive lifestyle management for women with coronary heart disease. *Patient Educ Couns* 1998;**35**:177–88.
141. Egger M, Dickersin K, Davey Smith G. Problems and limitations in conducting systematic reviews. In Egger M, Davey Smith G, Altman DG, editors. *Systematic reviews in health care: meta-analysis in context*. London: BMJ Publishing Group; 2001. pp. 43–68.
142. Rogutski S, Berra K, Haskell W. Home-based cardiac rehabilitation: variations on a theme. In Wenger NK, Smith LK, Froelicher ES, Comoss PM, editors. *Cardiac rehabilitation: a guide to practice in the 21st century*. New York: Marcel Dekker; 1999. pp. 343–59.
143. Miller P, Wikoff R, McMahan M, Garrett MJ, Ringel K. Influence of a nursing intervention on regimen adherence and societal adjustments postmyocardial infarction. *Nurs Res* 1988;**37**:297–302.
144. Miller P, Wikoff R, McMahan M, Garrett MJ, Ringel K, Collura D, et al. Personal adjustments and regimen compliance 1 year after myocardial infarction. *Heart Lung* 1989;**18**:339–46.
145. Oldridge NB, Jones NL. Improving patient compliance in cardiac exercise rehabilitation: effects of written agreement and self-monitoring. *Journal of Cardiac Rehabilitation* 1983;**3**:257–62.
146. Daltroy LH. Improving cardiac patient adherence to exercise regimens: a clinical trial of health education. *Journal of Cardiac Rehabilitation* 1985;**5**:40–9.
147. Mahler HIM, Kulik JA, Tarazi RY. Effects of a videotape information intervention at discharge on diet and exercise compliance after coronary bypass surgery. *J Cardiopulm Rehabil* 1999;**19**:170–7.
148. Aish AE, Isenberg M. Effects of Orem-based nursing intervention on nutritional self-care of myocardial infarction patients. *Int J Nur Stud* 1996;**33**:259–70.
149. Ashe ED. The effects of a relapse prevention program on adherence to a phase II cardiac exercise program. PhD thesis. Florida: Florida State University; 1993.
150. Hopper DL. The effects of telephone contact on the exercise adherence of cardiac patients. PhD thesis. Denver: University of Denver, 1995.
151. Duncan K, Pozehl B, Rosado K. The effects of behavioral feedback on adherence to dietary sodium intake for patients with congestive heart failure. *J Cardiopulm Rehabil* 2001;**21**:304.
152. Leslie M, Schuster PA. The effect of contingency contracting on adherence and knowledge of exercise regimens. *Patient Educ Couns* 1991;**18**:231–41.
153. Lack ER. Group psychotherapy and the cardiac rehabilitation process: a study in improving patient compliance. PhD thesis. Philadelphia: Temple University; 1985.
154. Marshall J, Penckofer S, Llewellyn J. Structured postoperative teaching and knowledge and compliance of patients who had coronary artery bypass surgery. *Heart Lung* 1986;**15**:76–82.
155. Huerin M, Rosario A, Bergman G, Belardi J, Trivi M, Guzman L, Rubinstein F. Compliance with cardiovascular rehabilitation: comparison of standard and a new adherence strategies. In *Proceedings of the XIIIth World Congress of Cardiology*, 26–30 April 1998, Rio de Janeiro, Brazil. Abstract 2419.
156. McKenna M, Dewar P, McCreary L, Fyfe T, Murdoch DL. Women and the lower intensity within cardiac rehabilitation: the forgotten groups. *British Association for Cardiac Rehabilitation Newsletter* 1998;**1**(4):14.
157. Erling J, Oldridge NB. Effect of a spousal-support program on compliance with cardiac rehabilitation. *Med Sci Sports Exerc* 1985;**17**:284.
158. Sparks KE, Shaw DK, Eddy D, Hanigosky P, Vantrese J. Alternatives for cardiac rehabilitation patients unable to return to a hospital-based program. *Heart Lung* 1993;**22**:298–303.

159. Blumenthal JA, Rejeski WJ, Walsh-Riddle M, Emery CF, Miller H, Roark S, *et al.* Comparison of high- and low-intensity exercise training early after acute myocardial infarction. *Am J Cardiol* 1988; **61**:26–30.
160. Brubaker PH, Warner JG Jr, Rejeski WJ, Edwards DG, Matrazzo BA, Ribisl PM, *et al.* Comparison of standard- and extended-length participation in cardiac rehabilitation on body composition, functional capacity, and blood lipids. *Am J Cardiol* 1996; **78**:769–73.
161. Lee JY, Jensen BE, Oberman A, Fletcher GF, Fletcher BJ, Raczynski JM. Adherence in the training levels comparison trial. *Med Sci Sports Exerc* 1996; **28**:47–52.
162. Dracup K, Meleis AI, Clark S, Clyburn A, Shields L, Staley M. Group counseling in cardiac rehabilitation: effect on patient compliance. *Patient Educ Couns* 1984; **6**:169–77.
163. Penckofer S, Llewellyn J. Adherence to risk-factor instructions one year following coronary artery bypass surgery. *J Cardiovasc Nurs* 1989; **3**:10–24.
164. Linde BJ, Janz NM. Effect of a teaching program on knowledge and compliance of cardiac patients. *Nurs Res* 1979; **28**:282–6.
165. Unden AL, Schenck-Gustafsson K, Axelsson PO, Karlsson I, Orth-Gomer K, Ydrefors AM. Positive effects of increased nurse support for male patients after acute myocardial infarction. *Qual Life Res* 1993; **2**:121–7.
166. van Elderen T, Maes S, Seegers G. Effects of a post-hospitalization group health education programme for patients with coronary heart disease. *Psychol Health* 1994; **9**:317–30.
167. Barnason S, Zimmerman L. A comparison of patient teaching outcomes among postoperative coronary artery bypass graft (CABG) patients. *Prog Cardiovasc Nurs* 1995; **10**:11–20.
168. Gordon NF, Haskell WL. Comprehensive cardiovascular disease risk reduction in a cardiac rehabilitation setting. *Am J Cardiol* 1997; **80**(8B):H69–73.
169. Labrador MP, Merz CNB, Pass R. A randomised trial of risk factor case management in coronary artery disease patients following cardiac rehabilitation. *Circulation* 1998; **98** Suppl 17:I–811.
170. Vale MJ, Jelinek MV, Santamarie JD, Best JD. Do patients with coronary heart disease achieve better cholesterol results with a coach? Randomised controlled trial. *Eur Heart J* 2000; **21** Abstr Suppl:220.
171. Senaratne MP, Griffiths J, Mooney D, Kasza L, Macdonald K, Hare S. Effectiveness of a planned strategy using cardiac rehabilitation nurses for the management of dyslipidemia in patients with coronary artery disease. *Am Heart J* 2001; **142**:975–81.
172. Skof E, Span M, Keber I. Secondary prevention in patients several years after myocardial infarction: comparison of an outpatient and an inpatient rehabilitation programme. *J Cardiovasc Risk* 2001; **8**:119–26.
173. Baile WF, Engel BT. A behavioural strategy for promoting treatment compliance following myocardial infarction. *Psychosom Med* 1978; **40**:413–19.
174. Stern MJ, Cleary P. National Exercise and Heart Disease Project. Psychosocial changes observed during a low-level exercise program. *Arch Intern Med* 1981; **141**:1463–7.
175. Starkey C, Michaelis J, de Lusignan S. Computerised systematic secondary prevention in ischaemic heart disease: a study in one practice. *Public Health* 2000; **114**:169–75.
176. Orem D. *Nursing concepts of practice*. 4th ed. St. Louis, MO: Mosby; 1991.
177. Marlatt GA, Gordon JR, editors. *Relapse prevention: maintenance strategies in the treatment of addictive behaviors*. New York: Guilford Press; 1985.
178. Tooth L, McKenna K. Contemporary issues in cardiac rehabilitation: implications for occupational therapists. *British Journal of Occupational Therapy* 1996; **59**:133–40.
179. Koikkalainen M, Lappalainen R, Mykkanen H. Why cardiac patients do not follow the nutritionist's advice: barriers in nutritional advice perceived in rehabilitation. *Disabil Rehabil* 1996; **18**:619–23.
180. Knapp D, Blackwell B. Emotional and behavioral problems in cardiac rehabilitation patients. *Journal of Cardiac Rehabilitation* 1985; **5**:112–23.
181. Edgren L. Co-production – an approach to cardiac rehabilitation from a service management perspective. *J Nurs Manage* 1998; **6**:77–85.
182. Oldridge NB. Compliance and dropout in cardiac exercise rehabilitation. *Journal of Cardiac Rehabilitation* 1984; **4**:166–77.
183. DeBusk RF, Miller NH, Superko HR, Dennis CA, Thomas RJ, Lew HT, *et al.* A case-management system for coronary risk factor modification after acute myocardial infarction. *Ann Intern Med* 1994; **120**:721–9.
184. Hoepfel-Harris JA. Rehabilitation of the cardiac patient. Improving compliance with an exercise program. *Am J Nurs* 1980; **80**:449–50.
185. Comoss PM. Nursing strategies to improve compliance with life-style changes in a cardiac rehabilitation population. *J Cardiovasc Nurs* 1988; **2**:23–36.
186. Emery CF. Adherence in cardiac and pulmonary rehabilitation. *J Cardiopulm Rehabil* 1995; **15**:420–3.

187. Moore SM, Kramer FM. Women's and men's preferences for cardiac rehabilitation program features. *J Cardiopulm Rehabil* 1996;**16**:163–8.
188. Allen JK, Redman BK. Cardiac rehabilitation in the elderly: improving effectiveness. *Rehabil Nurs* 1996;**21**:182–6.
189. Eftekhari H, Marson P, Mattu R, Trevelyan J, Needham T. Improving a cardiac rehabilitation programme for Asian patients in Coventry. *Coronary Health Care* 2000;**4**:210–1.
190. Dickerson SS. Cardiac spouses' help-seeking experiences. *Clin Nurs Res* 1998;**7**:6–24.
191. Axtell SS, Ludwig E, Lopez-Candales A. Intervention to improve adherence to ACC/AHA recommended adjunctive medications for the management of patients with an acute myocardial infarction. *Clin Cardiol* 2001;**24**:114–8.
192. Hillert B, Remonte S, Rodgers G, Yancy CW, Kaul AF. Improving patient outcomes by pooling resources (the Texas Heart Care Partnership experience). *Am J Cardiol* 2000;**85**(3A):43–51A.
193. Stokes HC. Education and training towards competency for cardiac rehabilitation nurses in the United Kingdom. *J Clin Nurs* 2000;**9**:411–9.
194. King KM, Teo KK. Cardiac rehabilitation referral and attendance: not one and the same. *Rehabil Nurs* 1998;**23**:246–51.
195. Effron MB, Forbes WJ, Weber AR, Mobley NH. Proximity to cardiac event improves compliance with a phase-II cardiac rehabilitation program in a freestanding rehabilitation center. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil* 1986;**67**:665.
196. Netten A, Rees T, Harrison G. *Unit costs of health and social care 2001*. The University of Kent, Canterbury: Personal Social Services Research Unit (PSSRU); 2001.
197. <http://www.nhscareers.nhs.uk>, March 2002. Accessed November 2002.
198. Lambert CM, Hurst NP, Lochhead A, McGregor K, Hunter M, Forbes J. A pilot study of the economic cost and clinical outcome of day patient vs. inpatient management of active rheumatoid arthritis. *Br J Rheumatol* 1994;**33**:383–8.
199. Bricker L, Garcia J, Henderson J, Mugford M, Neilson J, Roberts T, *et al.* Ultrasound screening in pregnancy: a systematic review of the clinical effectiveness, cost-effectiveness and women's views. *Health Technol Assess* 2000;**4**(16):1–193.
200. Davies A, Buxton MJ, Patterson DL, Webster-King J. Anti-coagulant monitoring service delivery: a comparison of costs of hospital and community outreach clinics. *Clin Lab Haematol* 2000;**22**:33–40.
201. Jones LW, Farrell JM, Jamieson J, Dorsch KD. Factors influencing enrollment in a cardiac rehabilitation exercise program. *Can J Cardiovasc Nurs* 2003;**13**:11–15.

Appendix I

Need for cardiac rehabilitation in the UK

TABLE 35 Need for cardiac rehabilitation in England

Gender	Age group	Population (in 1000s)	Counts										Rates per 100,000									
			AMI	HF	UA	CABG	PTCA	CABGp	Others	AMI	HF	UA	CABG	PTCA	CABGp	Others						
Female	35-44	3,368.4	271	15	442	46	113	23	1,232	8.0	0.4	13.1	1.4	3.4	0.7	36.6						
	45-54	3,451.0	1,154	86	2,072	311	523	72	4,915	33.4	2.5	60.0	9.0	15.2	2.1	142.4						
	55-64	2,398.5	2,585	261	4,005	886	1,165	233	9,803	107.8	10.9	167.0	36.9	48.6	9.7	408.7						
	65-74	2,253.2	4,586	808	6,148	1,399	1,316	410	13,777	203.5	35.9	272.9	62.1	58.4	18.2	611.5						
	75-84	1,601.2	4,767	1,232	5,892	488	435	172	11,105	297.7	76.9	368.0	30.5	27.2	10.7	693.5						
85+	737.5	1,973	732	1,983	12	18	2	4,455	267.5	99.3	268.9	1.6	2.4	0.3	604.1							
Male	35-44	3,450.0	1,768	88	1,587	359	667	91	3,923	51.2	2.6	46.0	10.4	19.3	2.6	113.7						
	45-54	3,446.3	5,543	470	4,977	1,951	2,531	420	14,122	160.8	13.6	144.4	56.6	73.4	12.2	409.8						
	55-64	2,361.5	7,977	1,138	8,325	4,638	3,818	968	24,906	337.8	48.2	352.5	196.4	161.7	41.0	1,054.7						
	65-74	1,949.9	8,568	1,752	9,422	4,773	2,625	1,083	24,755	439.4	89.9	483.2	244.8	134.6	55.5	1,269.6						
	75-84	1,017.8	5,379	1,399	5,711	1,058	638	371	12,074	528.5	137.5	561.1	104.0	62.7	36.5	1,186.3						
85+	265.5	1,156	356	1,074	19	23	4	2,247	435.3	134.1	404.4	7.2	8.7	1.5	846.2							
Both	35-44	6,818.4	2,040	103	2,031	405	780	114	5,157	29.9	1.5	29.8	5.9	11.4	1.7	75.6						
	45-54	6,897.2	6,698	557	7,052	2,262	3,054	492	19,043	97.1	8.1	102.2	32.8	44.3	7.1	276.1						
	55-64	4,760.0	10,570	1,399	12,336	5,524	4,983	1,201	34,731	222.1	29.4	259.2	116.1	104.7	25.2	729.6						
	65-74	4,203.0	13,162	2,562	15,577	6,173	3,941	1,493	38,561	313.2	61.0	370.6	146.9	93.8	35.5	917.5						
	75-84	2,619.0	10,156	2,634	11,607	1,546	1,073	543	23,195	387.8	100.6	443.2	59.0	41.0	20.7	885.6						
85+	1,003.1	3,134	1,089	3,064	31	41	6	6,713	312.4	108.6	305.5	3.1	4.1	0.6	669.3							
Total		26,300.7	45,760	8,344	51,667	15,941	13,872	3,849	127,400	174.0	31.7	196.4	60.6	52.7	14.6	484.4						

Source: HES, England. AMI, acute myocardial infarction; HF, heart failure; CABG, coronary artery bypass graft; PTCA, percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty; UA, unstable angina; CABGp, CABG with AMI or HF or PTCA or UA within one admission episode; All others: all patients who have been admitted more than once and with more than one discharge diagnosis.

TABLE 36 Need for cardiac rehabilitation in Wales

Gender	Age group	Population (in 1000s)	Counts										Rates per 100,000						
			AMI	HF	UA	CABG	PTCA	CABGp	Others	AMI	HF	UA	CABG	PTCA	CABGp	Others			
Female	35-44	201.9	22	0	37	1	3	3	86	10.9	0.0	18.3	0.5	1.5	1.5	42.6			
	45-54	197.8	66	9	114	12	21	5	310	33.4	4.6	57.6	6.1	10.6	2.5	156.7			
	55-64	160.8	205	32	258	48	42	15	662	127.5	19.9	160.4	29.9	26.1	9.3	411.7			
	65-74	144.2	374	61	351	67	38	25	998	259.4	42.3	243.4	46.5	26.4	17.3	692.1			
	75-84	108.5	347	112	350	19	8	15	962	319.8	103.2	322.6	17.5	7.4	13.8	886.6			
85+	44.2	152	76	97	0	0	0	406	343.9	171.9	219.5	0.0	0.0	0.0	918.6				
Male	35-44	203.2	99	6	61	15	17	7	208	48.7	3.0	30.0	7.4	8.4	3.4	102.4			
	45-54	196.5	408	34	311	85	98	31	916	207.6	17.3	158.3	43.3	49.9	15.8	466.2			
	55-64	156.6	610	74	507	205	146	72	1,657	389.5	47.3	323.8	130.9	93.2	46.0	1,058.1			
	65-74	125.2	603	162	570	183	93	63	1,614	481.6	129.4	455.3	146.2	74.3	50.3	1,289.1			
	75-84	69.3	420	121	329	48	14	22	938	606.1	174.6	474.7	69.3	20.2	31.7	1,353.5			
85+	15.9	91	22	65	0	1	0	211	572.3	138.4	408.8	0.0	6.3	0.0	1,327.0				
Both	35-44	405.1	122	6	98	16	20	10	294	30.1	1.5	24.2	3.9	4.9	2.5	72.6			
	45-54	394.2	476	43	426	97	119	36	1,226	120.8	10.9	108.1	24.6	30.2	9.1	311.0			
	55-64	317.4	816	106	765	253	188	87	2,320	257.1	33.4	241.0	79.7	59.2	27.4	730.9			
	65-74	269.4	978	223	922	250	131	88	2,612	363.0	82.8	342.2	92.8	48.6	32.7	969.6			
	75-84	177.9	768	233	680	67	22	37	1,903	431.7	131.0	382.2	37.7	12.4	20.8	1,069.7			
85+	60.1	243	98	162	0	1	0	618	404.3	163.1	269.6	0.0	1.7	0.0	1,028.3				
Total	1,624.1	3,403	709	3,053	683	481	258	8,973	209.5	43.7	188.0	42.1	29.6	15.9	552.5				

Source: PEDW.

TABLE 37 Need for cardiac rehabilitation in Northern Ireland

Gender	Age group	Population (in 1000s)	Counts							Rates per 100,000						
			AMI	HF	UA	CABG	PTCA	CABGp	Others	AMI	HF	UA	CABG	PTCA	CABGp	Others
Female	35-44	120.1	26	3	19	2	7	0	85	21.6	2.5	15.8	1.7	5.8	0.0	70.8
	45-54	98.7	82	11	102	11	47	0	258	83.1	11.1	103.3	11.1	47.6	0.0	261.4
	55-64	80.3	181	36	189	31	95	0	550	225.4	44.8	235.4	38.6	118.3	0.0	684.9
	65-74	67.6	271	105	276	38	79	0	693	400.9	155.3	408.3	56.2	116.9	0.0	1,025.1
	75-84	46.3	277	144	236	5	24	0	477	598.3	311.0	509.7	10.8	51.8	0.0	1,030.2
85+	17.5	94	54	55	0	0	0	101	537.1	308.6	314.3	0.0	0.0	0.0	577.1	
Male	35-44	115.9	108	6	74	16	63	0	252	93.2	5.2	63.8	13.8	54.4	0.0	217.4
	45-54	96.7	331	35	270	74	247	1	819	342.3	36.2	279.2	76.5	255.4	1.0	846.9
	55-64	75.6	468	117	514	183	358	3	1,401	619.0	154.8	679.9	242.1	473.5	4.0	1,853.2
	65-74	54.1	478	171	494	126	227	1	1,214	883.5	316.1	913.1	232.9	419.6	1.8	2,244.0
	75-84	28.4	249	138	215	25	31	0	436	876.8	485.9	757.0	88.0	109.2	0.0	1,535.2
85+	6.1	40	43	37	0	0	0	59	655.7	704.9	606.6	0.0	0.0	0.0	967.2	
Both	35-44	236	134	9	93	18	70	0	337	56.8	3.8	39.4	7.6	29.7	0.0	142.8
	45-54	195.3	413	46	372	85	294	1	1,077	211.5	23.6	190.5	43.5	150.5	0.5	551.5
	55-64	155.9	649	153	703	214	453	3	1,951	416.3	98.1	450.9	137.3	290.6	1.9	1,251.4
	65-74	121.7	749	276	770	164	306	1	1,907	615.4	226.8	632.7	134.8	251.4	0.8	1,567.0
	75-84	74.8	526	282	451	30	55	0	913	703.2	377.0	602.9	40.1	73.5	0.0	1,220.6
85+	23.6	134	97	92	0	0	0	160	567.8	411.0	389.8	0.0	0.0	0.0	678.0	
Total		807.3	2,605	863	2,481	511	1,178	5	6,345	322.7	106.9	307.3	63.3	145.9	0.6	786.0

Source: HIS, Northern Ireland.

Appendix 2

Need for and estimated level of cardiac rehabilitation provision in the UK

TABLE 38 Need and estimated level of provision in England (total number of cardiac rehabilitation centres n = 220)

	Mean	SD	Median	IQR	n	Sum of all patients	Non-responding centres (n)	Total sum of patients (responding plus non-responding centres)		
								Mean	Median	Mean
No. of patients referred to CR	349.0	244.33	279.0	180-450	117	40,840	103	76,793	69,577	59,380-87,190
No. of patients joining CR	208.6	141.8	177.5	112-277	114	23,781	106	45,893	42,596	35,653-53,143
Eligible patients (source: HES)			No. of patients			Proportion of patients referred to CR (%) Data for non-responders imputed			Proportion of patients joining CR (%) Data for non-responders imputed	
						Mean	IQR	Mean	Median	IQR
All patients with primary diagnosis of IHD			266,833		29	26	22-33	17	16	13-20
All patients discharged with AMI, CABG, PTCA, UA			131,089		59	53	45-67	35	33	27-41
All patients with primary diagnosis of IHD <75 years			202,001		38	34	29-43	23	21	18-26
IHD, ischaemic heart disease.										

TABLE 39 Need and estimated level of provision in Wales (total number of cardiac rehabilitation centres n = 18)

	Mean	SD	Median	IQR	n	Sum of all patients	Non-responding centres (n)	Total sum of patients (responding plus non-responding centres)			
								Mean	Median	IQR	
No. of patients referred to CR	316.7	170.7	311	180-400	10	3,167	8	5,701	5,655	4,607-6,367	
No. of patients joining CR	185.4	93.0	150	119-248	13	2,410	5	3,337	3,160	3,005-3,650	
Eligible patients (source: PEDW)											
				No. of patients						Proportion of patients referred to CR (%)	
										Data for non-responders imputed	
						Mean	Median	IQR	Mean	Median	IQR
All patients with primary diagnosis of IHD				17,650		33	32	26-36	19	18	17-21
All patients discharged with AMI, CABG, PTCA, UA				7,878		72	72	59-81	42	40	38-46
All patients with primary diagnosis of IHD <75 years				12,728		45	44	36-50	26	25	24-29

TABLE 40 Need and estimated level of provision in Northern Ireland (total number of cardiac rehabilitation centres n = 10)

	Mean	SD	Median	IQR	n	Sum of all patients	Non-responding centres (n)	Total sum of patients (responding plus non-responding centres)			
								Mean	Median	IQR	
No. of patients referred to CR	205.5	101.9	196	141.5-269.5	4	822	6	2,055	1,998	1,671-2,439	
No. of patients joining CR	146.5	60.4	154	107-186	4	586	6	1,465	1,510	1,228-1,702	
Eligible patients (source: HIS)											
				No. of patients						Proportion of patients referred to CR (%)	
										Data for non-responders imputed	
						Mean	Median	IQR	Mean	Median	IQR
All patients with primary diagnosis of IHD				13,988		15	14	12-17	11	11	9-12
All patients discharged with AMI, CABG, PTCA, UA				6,780		30	30	25-36	22	22	18-25
All patients with primary diagnosis of IHD <75 years				11,248		18	18	15-22	13	13	11-15

TABLE 41 Estimated level of provision in Scotland (total number of cardiac rehabilitation centres n = 36)

	Mean	SD	Median	IQR	n	Sum of all patients	Non-responding centres (n)	Total sum of patients (responding plus non-responding centres)		
								Mean	Median	IQR
No. of patients referred to CR	207.3	150.4	198.5	65-340	24	4,975	12	7,462	7,357	5,755-9,055
No. of patients joining CR	132.2	101.3	100	47-218	21	2,777	15	4,761	4,277	3,482-6,047

Appendix 3

British Association for Cardiac Rehabilitation additional postal questionnaire

Dear Cardiac Rehab Coordinator,

We have recently been funded by the NHS Health Technology Assessment Research & Development programme to look at the provision, uptake and adherence to cardiac rehabilitation programmes in currently under-represented groups, which includes women, elderly people, Black and Asian groups, and patients with diagnoses of angina, heart failure and post-revascularisation. As part of this work, we need an up-to-date picture of current service provision. We are aware that you have recently completed a questionnaire for the BHF/BACR survey, and we are collaborating with Dr Bethell and Sally Turner to use the data you have kindly provided. There are a few additional questions we need to ask that were not covered in the recent survey. We know you are extremely busy people so we have put together a short questionnaire that complements the BHF/BACR survey, that should only take a few minutes to complete. Any data will be added to the main BHF/BACR database. To be consistent, we are asking for information relevant to the period *1st January to 31st December 2000*. Please contact us if you have any queries regarding this. Please could you return the completed questionnaire in the SAE or fax through to FAO K Rees.

Thank you so much for your help with this important work

Very best wishes

Dr Karen Rees, BHF Research Fellow

ID

**ADDITIONAL SHORT QUESTIONNAIRE TO COMPLEMENT THE BHF/BACR
DATABASE OF UK CARDIAC REHABILITATION CENTRES 2001**

1. How long is your supervised phase 3 programme for each patient? (please give an average figure for each component of CCR, relevant to your programme)

Exercise component

No. weeks	No. sessions/week	Average length of sessions	Average no. patients/session
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

Health education component (e.g. Healthy diet, smoking cessation)

No. weeks	No. sessions/week	Average length of sessions	Average no. patients/session
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

Psychological component (e.g. Relaxation/stress management) if given

No. weeks	No. sessions/week	Average length of sessions	Average no. patients/session
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

Total for whole programme – if unable to break down into component sessions

No. weeks	No. sessions/week	Average length of sessions	Average no. patients/session
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

2. Do you make any special efforts to promote attendance at rehab sessions for any of the following groups? **(TICK ANY THAT APPLY)**

Women	<input type="checkbox"/>	Patients with heart failure	<input type="checkbox"/>
People aged 65+	<input type="checkbox"/>	Patients with angina	<input type="checkbox"/>
Black and Asian groups	<input type="checkbox"/>	Patients who have had CABG/PTCA	<input type="checkbox"/>

Please provide details of the methods you use:

3. Do you have any spare capacity within your current service for **additional patients?**

<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Yes	No

If yes, please indicate the number of additional patients that could be included without any increase in resources: patients/week

4. During the last year approximately how many patients were referred?

Total	Male	Female	65+ years	post-MI	CABG/PTCA
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
Heart Failure	Angina	Black and Asian groups			
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>			

During the year how many patients joined the programme?

Total	Male	Female	65+ years	post-MI	CABG/PTCA
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

Heart Failure	Angina	Black and Asian groups
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

Of these patients, how many (eventually) completed the programme?

Total	Male	Female	65+ years	post-MI	CABG/PTCA
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

Heart Failure	Angina	Black and Asian groups
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

With many thanks for your help in completing this questionnaire. Please could you post back in the envelope provided, or fax through (FAO K Rees) by 31st October 2001

CR Coordinator/contact.....
 CR Programme, where based.....
 Region.....

Appendix 4

Literature search strategies

Search terms for major databases are given. These terms were adapted appropriately for other databases.

Search strategy for MEDLINE

- 1 exp Heart diseases/
- 2 coronary.tw.
- 3 cardiac.tw.
- 4 CABG.tw.
- 5 myocardial.tw.
- 6 angina.tw.
- 7 heart failure.tw.
- 8 heart disease\$.tw.
- 9 or/1-8
- 10 exp Rehabilitation/
- 11 exp Rehabilitation centers/
- 12 exp Rehabilitation nursing/
- 13 rehabil\$.tw.
- 14 Aftercare/
- 15 aftercare.tw.
- 16 Convalescence/
- 17 convalescen\$.tw.
- 18 recuperat\$.tw.
- 19 or/10-18
- 20 9 and 19
- 21 exp Heart diseases/rh [Rehabilitation]
- 22 20 or 21
- 23 Patient education/
- 24 exp Counseling/
- 25 exp Exercise therapy/
- 26 Exercise/
- 27 exp Psychotherapy/
- 28 (patient adj2 educat\$.tw.
- 29 counsel\$.tw.
- 30 (behavi\$ adj2 therap\$.tw.
- 31 psychosocial\$.tw.
- 32 ((lifestyle or life-style) adj2 intervent\$.tw.
- 33 ((exercise\$ or fitness) adj5 (treatment or intervent\$ or program\$)).tw.
- 34 ((lifestyle or life-style) adj5 (intervent\$ or program\$ or treatment\$)).tw.
- 35 Nurse practitioners/
- 36 "nurse practitioner\$.tw.
- 37 or/23-36
- 38 9 and 37
- 39 (secondary adj5 prevent\$.tw.
- 40 Survival rate/
- 41 (reduc\$ adj5 (morbidity\$ or mortality\$)).tw.

- 42 Patient readmission/
- 43 rehospitali\$.tw.
- 44 ((improv\$ or increase\$ or decrease\$) adj5 (recover\$ or function)).tw.
- 45 Disease management/
- 46 (disease adj2 manage\$.tw.
- 47 Recovery of function/
- 48 exp "Costs and cost analysis"/
- 49 compliance.tw.
- 50 adheren\$.tw.
- 51 non-compliance.tw.
- 52 costs.tw.
- 53 Patient compliance/
- 54 or/39-53
- 55 37 and 54 and 9
- 56 22 or 55

Search strategy for EMBASE

- 1 exp Heart disease/
- 2 coronary.tw.
- 3 cardiac.tw.
- 4 CABG.tw.
- 5 myocardial.tw.
- 6 angina.tw.
- 7 heart failure.tw.
- 8 heart disease\$.tw.
- 9 or/1-8
- 10 exp rehabilitation/
- 11 exp rehabilitation center/
- 12 rehabil\$.tw.
- 13 exp convalescence/
- 14 convalescen\$.tw.
- 15 recuperat\$.tw.
- 16 or/10-15
- 17 9 and 16
- 18 exp Heart disease/rh
- 19 Heart rehabilitation/
- 20 or/17-19
- 21 exp patient education/
- 22 exp counseling/
- 23 exp kinesiotherapy/
- 24 exp exercise/
- 25 exp psychotherapy/
- 26 (patient adj2 educat\$.tw.
- 27 counsel\$.tw.
- 28 (behavi\$ adj2 therap\$.tw.
- 29 psychosocial\$.tw.
- 30 ((lifestyle or life-style) adj5 (intervent\$ or

program\$ or treatment\$).tw.
 31 ((exercise\$ or fitness\$) adj5 (treatment\$ or
 intervent\$ or program\$)).tw.
 32 Nurse practitioner/
 33 "nurse practitioner\$.tw
 34 or/21-33
 35 9 and 34
 36 exp survival/
 37 (patient\$ adj2 readmi\$).tw.
 38 rehospitalli\$.tw.
 39 ((secondary or tertiary) adj5 prevent\$).tw.
 40 (reduc\$ adj5 (mortal\$ or morbid\$)).tw.
 41 ((improv\$ or increase\$ or decrease\$) adj5
 (recover\$ or function\$)).tw.
 42 (disease\$ adj2 manag\$).tw.
 43 exp aftercare/
 44 aftercare.tw.
 45 exp economic evaluation/
 56 costs.tw.
 57 Patient compliance/
 58 (compliance or non-compliance).tw.
 59 adheren\$.tw.
 50 Patient satisfaction/
 51 or/36-50
 52 35 and 51
 45 20 or 52

The results of all searching were downloaded into a reference management database and then searched across all fields for the following terms:

Adherence
 Dropout*
 Drop-out*
 Comply
 Compliance
 Noncompliance
 Participant*
 Participation
 Referral*
 Nonattend*
 Attend*
 Refusal*
 Patient attitude*
 Patient satisfaction*
 Barrier*
 Nonparticipant*
 Non-participant*
 Treatment refusal
 Motivat*
 Cost
 Costs
 Econom*

Appendix 5

Inclusion/exclusion form

Uptake and adherence to cardiac rehabilitation	Database number		
	Date assessed		
First author		Excluded?	Included?
Source and date	Uptake	A	A
	Prof compliance	B	B
	Adherence	C	C
	Audits/descriptive	I	I
	Economic	E	E

	Intervention to increase uptake by patients	Intervention to improve professional compliance	Intervention to improve adherence
Reviewer (initials)			

1. Is an intervention evaluated?			
2. Patients: AMI, CABG, PTCA, Angina, Heart Failure, Other CVD (Specify)			
3. Outcome: people attending, losses to follow up, adherence (medical advice, therapy, clinical events, rehospitalisation, costs)			

If 1, 2 and 3 yes then include study

4. Reason for exclusion	
-------------------------	--

Other information

5. Audit/descriptive information
6. Economic information

Appendix 6

Data extraction form

Data extraction form – HTA SR of uptake, patient adherence and professional compliance**Reference:****Database ID:****Date:****Reviewer:** (initials)**Subject relevant to:** (circle all that apply)

A – Intervention to increase uptake by patients

B – Intervention to improve professional compliance

C – Intervention to improve patient adherence

1. **Data Source:** (circle) Published only Unpublished only mixed**Country of publication/recruitment** –2. **Study type:** (circle)

Between group comparisons: RCT (adequate allocation concealment)

Quasi RCT (inadequate allocation concealment, e.g. alternate allocation, by hospital No., DoB etc.)

Non-randomised trial (e.g. Allocation to groups but no attempt at randomisation)

Before and after study (comparing outcomes in different groups of patients before and after an intervention)

Within group comparisons: Before and after study (comparing outcomes in the same patients before and after an intervention)

3. Quality of studies:**Creation of comparison groups**

a) generation of random sequence method_-----

b) concealment of allocation method_-----

c) how allocation occurred (e.g. patient or doctor preference) detail_-----

d) balance groups by design (e.g. matching) detail_-----

e) within group comparisons (circle if applies)

Comparability of groups

a) Were comparison groups similar at baseline? Yes No Unclear

b) Were prognostic factors identified? Yes No Unclear

c) Was case-mix adjustment used to account for differences between groups? Yes No Unclear

d) (For within group comparisons only) — were only paired responses analysed? Yes No Unclear

Blinding of outcomes

a) Were outcomes assessed blind/independently of intervention? Yes No Unclear

Follow-up

a) Was there equal follow-up between groups? Yes No Unclear

b) What was the overall loss to follow-up? _____ Not reported

Sample

a) Prospective or retrospective sampling? Prospective Retrospective

b) Were inclusion and exclusion criteria specified? Yes No Unclear

c) Was the sample size planned (e.g. sample size calculation included)? Yes No Unclear

d) Is representativeness of the sample assessed? (add comments) Yes No Unclear

4. Participants studied: (circle all that apply)

Diagnosis

Post MI CABG/PTCA Heart Failure (chronic / secondary to MI) Angina

Participants

Men Women Age limited (specify) Ethnic Minority Groups

For the whole sample:

Mean age (range) _____

Percentage men _____

Case mix (specify, e.g. 100% MI or mixed diagnoses and proportions) _____

Percentage white (if known) _____

Inclusion/Exclusion criteria (if stated) _____

5. Intervention (investigator's description in as much detail as possible, including theoretical basis,

intensity and duration, group or individual, setting, etc.)

A – Intervention to increase uptake by patients

B – Intervention to improve professional compliance

C – Intervention to improve patient adherence

Description of comparison group (treatment or usual care) -----

Duration of follow-up (not duration of intervention) -----

6. Outcomes: (circle all that apply)

Specified primary outcome (specify) -----

Attendance rates
(give criteria used)

Adherence to rehabilitation/medical advice/therapy
(give criteria used)

Clinical events

Rehospitalisation

Costs

Changes in risk factors

Other (specify)

Number of follow-up measurement points (give time intervals, e.g. 6 months, 1 year)

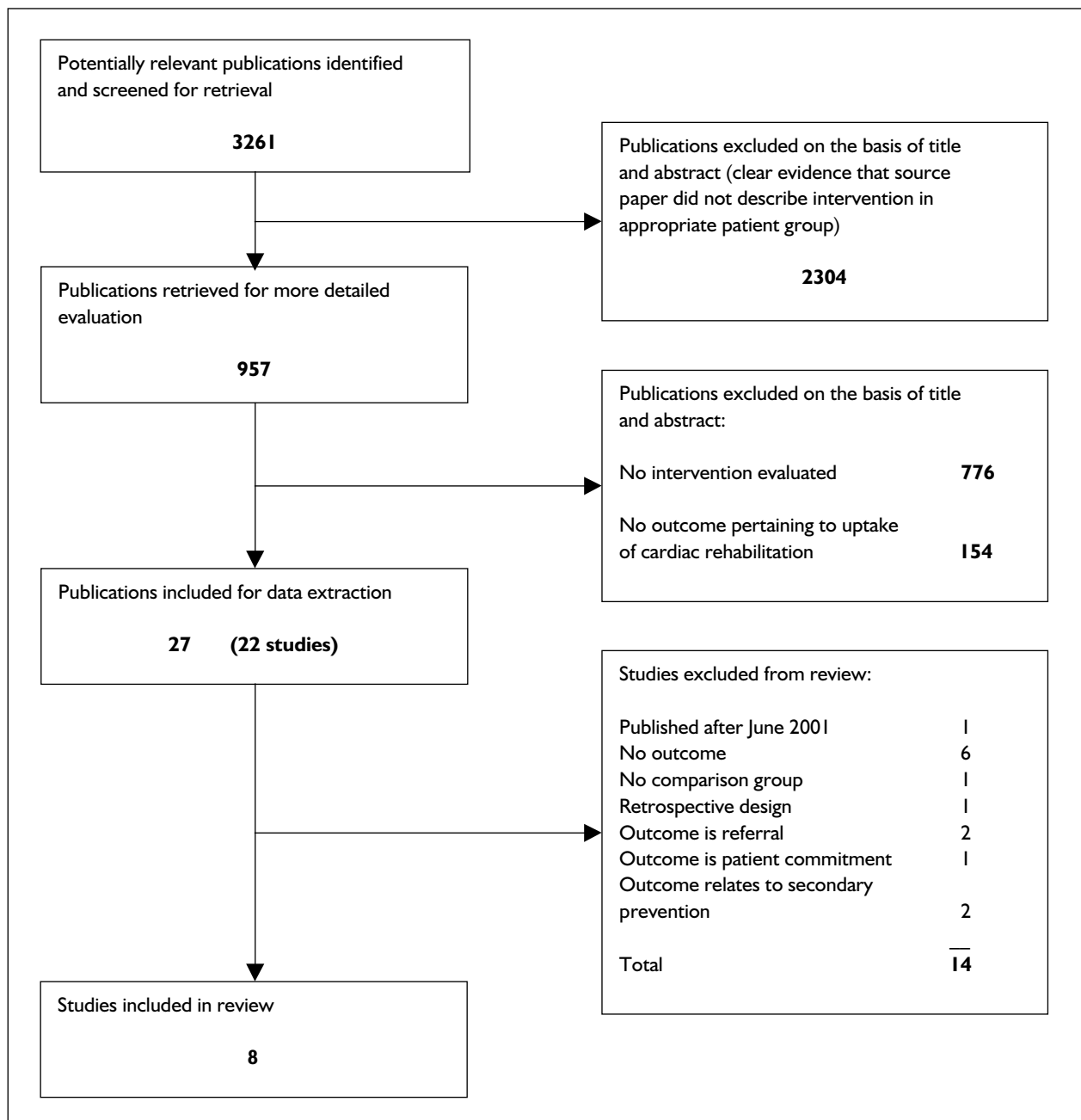
7. Study comparisons: (if multiple time points, use longest duration of follow-up)

Characteristics	Intervention/ Before	Control/ After	(additional column for 3 arm trial or 3 time phase studies)
<u>Baseline characteristics:</u> Number randomised Age (mean SD range) Sex (% male)			
<u>Outcomes:</u> Attendance Nos (%) Adherence to medication/therapy – Nos adhering (%) Adherence to medication/therapy – Nos adhering (%) Losses to follow-up Nos (%)			
Specified primary outcome: N(%) Clinical events: N(%) Total Mortality N(%) Cardiac Mortality N(%) Non-fatal MI N(%) Revascularisation N(%) CVD event (stroke/TIA) N(%) Other N(%)			
Hospitalisation/Rehospitalisation Number (%) of patients Number of occasions			
Costs (specify what)			
Other outcomes:			

8. Notes (what did the investigators find? Interesting features?)

Appendix 7

Flow diagram of the systematic review of interventions to improve uptake of cardiac rehabilitation (QUOROM statement flow diagram)



Appendix 8

Studies evaluating interventions to improve the uptake of cardiac rehabilitation

Studies are listed in terms of study design and the hierarchy of evidence, with RCTs first.

Authors, year and country (publication type)	Study type and size	Study quality	Participants' case-mix, % men, mean age (SD), ethnicity if stated	Intervention: details including setting, staff involved, intensity, follow-up period for outcome assessment	Comparison group: details of usual care	Principal outcome measure and results	Other outcomes and results	Comments: authors' conclusions, interesting features
Wyer <i>et al.</i> , 2001 ^{105,106} UK (journal and thesis)	Parallel group RCT, 87 patients randomised	Patients were handed a sealed numbered envelope with a nominal letter. Half of the envelopes also contained an intervention letter. Envelope contents known to a research assistant only and had been allocated to intervention or control by random number assignment. Envelopes given to patients in numerical order. CR nurse not aware of group assigned to; however, no procedure in place to stop patients telling nurse which letter received. Comparison groups similar at baseline	All patients post-MI. Mean age 63 years, 87% men	Letters based on the theory of planned behaviour (Ajzen and Madden, 1986 ¹⁰⁷) designed to increase attendance at outpatient CR were given to patients 3 days post-MI and sent 3 weeks post-MI. The first letter was designed to influence acceptance and the second was designed to influence attendance. Patients also received a nominal letter of thanks at 3 days and the standard letter detailing course dates as sent to control patients. After allocation to groups the CR nurse saw all patients for routine assessment and personal invitation to the programme. For patients who declined the offer of a place a brief second letter was sent wishing them well and informing them that they were still welcome to contact the team	Nominal letter of thanks given to patients at 3 days post-MI and the standard letter detailing course dates	Uptake defined as attendance at the outpatient CR programme. Uptake was 86% in the intervention group and 57% (authors state 59%) in the control group ($\chi^2 = 7.91$, $df = 1$, $p < 0.0025$)	Women were less likely to attend the programme, but neither age nor distance lived from the programme predicted attendance	A significant improvement in uptake of outpatient CR was observed in the group that received the letters designed to influence acceptance and attendance. The authors note that the intervention may have worked by acting as a fear message (wording in letter: "research has shown that attendance can reduce the chances of dying from another heart attack"), rather than through implementation of theory of planned behaviour

continued

Authors, year and country (publication type)	Study type and size	Study quality	Participants' case-mix, % men, mean age (SD), ethnicity if stated	Intervention: details including setting, staff involved, intensity, follow-up period for outcome assessment	Comparison group: details of usual care	Principal outcome measure and results	Other outcomes and results	Comments: authors' conclusions, interesting features
Hillebrand et al., 1995 ¹⁰⁸ Germany (journal) Relates to attendance at outpatient heart group after inpatient CR	Parallel group RCT, 94 patients randomised. Results reported for 87 (4 patients died, three refused follow-up)	Method of randomisation and allocation concealment unclear. Comparison groups were similar at baseline	Post-MI patients attending inpatient CR programme. Mean age 52 (33–60) years, 89% men	Special outpatient care programme to support blue-collar workers after MI to join coronary groups. The programme consisted of four different conversations between patients and a social worker: at end of rehabilitation programme, telephone contact after 4 weeks, home visit after 3 months and telephone contact after 6 months	No outpatient care programme	Attendance at cardiac group after 12 months. In the group with special outpatient care 57% of patients attended a cardiac group compared with 27% of controls ($p < 0.005$)		The authors note the motivating effect of an outpatient care programme as a link between inpatient CR and cardiac groups

continued

Authors, year and country (publication type)	Study type and size	Study quality	Participants' case-mix, % men, mean age (SD), ethnicity if stated	Intervention: details including setting, staff involved, intensity, follow-up period for outcome assessment	Comparison group: details of usual care	Principal outcome measure and results	Other outcomes and results	Comments: authors' conclusions, interesting features
Jolly <i>et al.</i> , 1999 ⁰⁴ UK (journal) Also Bradley <i>et al.</i> , 1997 ⁰² and Jolly <i>et al.</i> , 1998 ⁰³	67 general practices randomised within strata (by funding holding status, distance from local CR programme and number of whole-time partner equivalents). 277 patients from randomised intervention practices and 320 from control practices	No details of randomisation procedure. Follow-up of patients carried out by a nurse not responsible for delivering the intervention to the patient's practice. Power calculations reported for serum cholesterol change, distance walked and smoking. Comparison groups were similar at baseline. Loss to follow-up was 10% in intervention group and 9% in control group. Analysis was by intention to treat but excluded deaths	Patients registered with 67 general practices in a specified geographical area. Patients admitted to hospital with MI (71%) or with angina of recent onset (<3 months) seen in hospital (29%). Patients were judged well enough to participate by medical and nursing staff on the ward or in clinic	Specialist cardiac liaison nurses coordinated the transfer of care between hospital and general practice. The liaison nurse saw patients in hospital and encouraged them to see the practice nurse after discharge. Support was provided to practice nurses by regular contact, including a telephone call shortly before patient discharge to discuss care and book a first follow-up visit to the practice. Practice nurses were encouraged to telephone the liaison nurse to discuss problems or to seek advice on clinical or organisational issues. Each patient was given a patient-held record card which prompted and guided follow-up at standard intervals	No contact between specialist cardiac liaison nurses and general practices. Not explicitly stated, but understood to be no recommendation to see practice nurse and no patient-held record	Serum cholesterol, blood pressure, distance walked in 6 minutes and smoking cessation did not differ between groups. Body mass index was slightly lower in the intervention group. More patients in the intervention group attended at least one outpatient CR session compared with controls (42% vs 24%, $p < 0.001$). The difference was most marked in angina patients (42% vs 10%)	The programme providing coordinated follow-up care by specialist cardiac liaison nurses did not improve health outcomes, but was effective in promoting at least one outpatient CR session attendance	

continued

Authors, year and country (publication type)	Study type and size	Study quality	Participants' case-mix, % men, mean age (SD), ethnicity if stated	Intervention: details including setting, staff involved, intensity, follow-up period for outcome assessment	Comparison group: details of usual care	Principal outcome measure and results	Other outcomes and results	Comments: authors' conclusions, interesting features
Osika, 2001 ⁸² UK (thesis)	Non-randomised study. One district with intervention (98 patients) and one district without (77 patients)	Groups similar at baseline	Post-MI patients invited to attend an outpatient CR programme. Mean age 72 years, 78% men	Home visiting by lay volunteers. Visitors were trained 5 hours per day for up to 7 days. Patients were visited for approximately 30 minutes each week for 6 weeks. Lay volunteers provided advice relating to rehabilitation and offered to accompany the patient to the first outpatient CR appointment	District with no lay volunteer visiting	Attendance at first outpatient CR appointment. In the district with lay volunteer visiting 71% of patients attended a first appointment at outpatient CR. In the control district 47% attended ($p = 0.02$). No difference in several clinical outcomes and indicators at first CR attendance		The lay volunteer home visiting service was associated with increased uptake of outpatient CR services
Krasemann and Busch, 1988 ¹⁰⁹ Germany (journal) Relates to attendance at an outpatient heart group after an inpatient CR programme	Non-randomised trial. 200 patients studied	Groups of patients attending in different periods. No information comparing groups at baseline. 156 patients followed up. Loss to follow-up 22%	All male patients post-MI	After completion of an inpatient CR programme patients were given a pamphlet with information about outpatient heart groups designed to motivate patients to join. The booklet contained general information about heart disease, including nutrition, exercise, relaxation and medication. Patients were also given the addresses of local outpatient heart groups	After completion of an inpatient CR programme patients were given the addresses of local outpatient heart groups	Number of patients who joined an outpatient heart group after 6 months. 78 patients were followed up in both the intervention and control groups. 66.5% of patients who received the intervention attended a heart group compared with 31.0% in the control group ($\chi^2 = 20$, $df = 1$, $p < 0.001$)		The authors report that the informative pamphlet used to motivate patients was associated with increased attendance at outpatient heart groups. Patients ranked sources of information: personal conversation with doctor, pamphlet, lectures, personal talks with caring persons and talks with other patients

continued

Authors, year and country (publication type)	Study type and size	Study quality	Participants' case-mix, % men, mean age (SD), ethnicity if stated	Intervention: details including setting, staff involved, intensity, follow-up period for outcome assessment	Comparison group: details of usual care	Principal outcome measure and results	Other outcomes and results	Comments: authors' conclusions, interesting features
Mosca <i>et al.</i> , 1998 ⁴¹ USA (conference abstract)	Before- and after-study. Comparison of outpatient CR participation rates in two 6-month periods with a total of 199 patients	No information on baseline characteristics of the two groups	All patients post-MI. Mean age 61 years, with 68% men	Critical care pathway prompting referral for outpatient CR	Before implementation of critical care pathway	Overall participation at outpatient CR was 54%, as determined by patient self-report. The critical care pathway was associated with a non-significant increase in outpatient CR participation (OR 1.9, 95% CI 0.6 to 5.5)		The authors conclude that a systems approach, involving a prompt for outpatient CR referral as part of a discharge critical care pathway, may potentially increase rates of participation in CR for women
Imich, 1997 ¹⁰ UK (journal)	Before- and after-study. Comparison of 12-month audit periods	No information on the numbers of patients or baseline characteristics of the two groups	Post-MI and postcardiac surgery patients	Postdischarge, pre-outpatient CR home visits by trained community nurses. For MI patients this was 2–3 weeks after discharge and for heart surgery patients 4–5 weeks. Visits were aimed at: reduction of anxiety levels, enabling patients to make and maintain lifestyle changes, identifying problems or potential problems, and providing patients with support, education and counselling. The number and frequency of home visits were dependent on individual requirement	Patients discharged from hospital before the nurse home-visiting programme was instigated	Patient perception of the postdischarge home visiting service. Attendance at outpatient CR by invited patients increased from 55% before to 75% after instigation of the programme. As patient numbers are not given, the significance of this cannot be determined		Introduction of postdischarge home visits by trained community nurses reported to be associated with an increased attendance at outpatient CR

continued

Authors, year and country (publication type)	Study type and size	Study quality	Participants' case-mix, % men, mean age (SD), ethnicity if stated	Intervention: details including setting, staff involved, intensity, follow-up period for outcome assessment	Comparison group: details of usual care	Principal outcome measure and results	Other outcomes and results	Comments: authors' conclusions, interesting features
Scott et al., 2000 ¹¹¹ Australia (journal)	Before- and after-study. Comparison of clinical indicators in three periods: pre-intervention (133 patients), implementation of intervention (271 patients), and post-intervention (245 patients)	Pre- and postintervention groups were similar at baseline, but no information was reported for the intervention period. Outpatient CR programme was not fully operational in the preintervention period. Authors assumed that patient characteristics, diagnostic methods and treatment modalities would remain essentially unchanged throughout the study	Post-MI patients. Patient characteristics only available for pre- and postintervention groups. Mean age 66 years, 66% men	Dissemination of evidence-based clinical guidelines for the management of AMI to hospital staff and GPs. Information on clinical indicators was fed back to all hospital consultant physicians, senior emergency staff, medical service directors and senior clinicians. As part of the feedback the observed proportion of patients receiving the treatments with a quality threshold or minimum level of utilisation indicative of a reasonable standard of care. Local providers could compare and improve their own practice	Before dissemination of evidence-based clinical guidelines	Clinical indicator changes pre- to postintervention. No changes were seen in β -blocker, aspirin or angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitor use. Lipid-lowering drug use increased from 23% to 56% ($p < 0.003$). Outpatient CR service became operational at start of intervention period and showed a steady increase in utilisation rate from 24% to 54% ($p = 0.003$)	The authors suggest that clinical guidelines combined with feedback of clinical indicators to health professionals were useful in improving quality of care, including outpatient CR utilisation in MI patients. However, the improvement may be due to parallel changes in levels of provision	

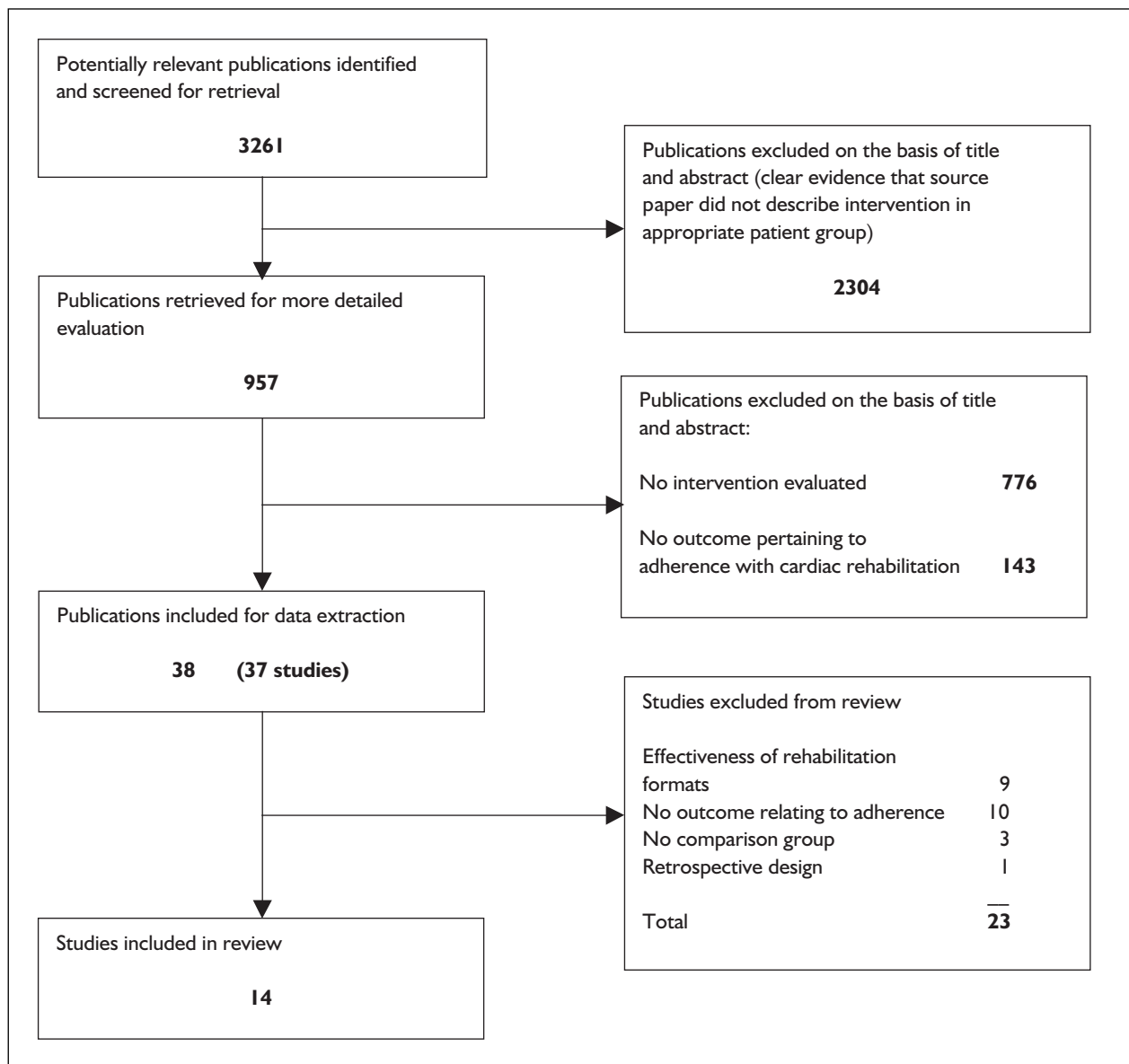
Appendix 9

Studies excluded from the review of interventions to improve uptake of cardiac rehabilitation

Authors, year	Intervention	Reason for exclusion
Campbell <i>et al.</i> , 1998 ^{125,126}	Nurse-led clinic giving secondary prevention assessment and advice	Outcome: use of secondary prevention, not attendance at CR
Caulin-Glaser & Schmeizel, 2000 ¹²³	Education of health professionals about CR	Outcome: referral not attendance
Feder <i>et al.</i> , 1999 ¹²⁷	Leaflets promoting secondary prevention. Also general practices received letters summarising effective secondary prevention	Outcome: attendance at a general practice and drug prescribing, not CR
Foresman, 1997 ¹²⁰	Telephone invitation to CR programme	No comparison group
Johnson, 2000 ¹¹⁸	Nurse telephone follow-up	No data: descriptive
Kalayi <i>et al.</i> , 1999 ¹²²	Computerised referral pathway	Outcome: referral not attendance
Keck <i>et al.</i> , 1991, ¹¹³ Keck & Budde, 1996 ¹¹⁴	Comprehensive motivation programme integrated into CR to improve attendance at heart group after inpatient CR	No data: descriptive
Levknecht <i>et al.</i> , 1997 ¹¹⁶	Outpatient clinical pathway	No outcome data: descriptive
McCarney <i>et al.</i> , 2000 ¹¹⁹	General practice database identifies patients for home visit by health visitor to improve secondary prevention	No data: descriptive
Mehta <i>et al.</i> , 2000 ¹²¹	Quality improvement initiative: critical care pathway, patient education tool and staff education	Retrospective study. Allocation to groups according to physician preference
Millar 1993 ¹¹⁵	Home visit by cardiac support worker	No data: descriptive
Pasquali <i>et al.</i> , 2001 ¹¹²	Telephone call describing CR benefits and assistance with referral	Out of review period
Suskin <i>et al.</i> , 2000 ¹²⁴	Physician endorsement	Outcome: commitment to participate, not attendance
Tod <i>et al.</i> , 1998 ¹¹⁷	Integration of primary and secondary care	No outcome data: descriptive

Appendix 10

Flow diagram of the systematic review of interventions to improve adherence to cardiac rehabilitation (QUOROM statement flow diagram)



Appendix II

Studies evaluating interventions to improve adherence to cardiac rehabilitation

Studies are listed in terms of study design and the hierarchy of evidence, with RCTs first.

Authors, year and country (publication type)	Study type and size	Study quality	Participants' case-mix, % men, mean age (SD), ethnicity if stated	Intervention: details including setting, staff involved, intensity, follow-up period for outcome assessment	Comparison group: details of usual care	Principal outcome measure and results	Other outcomes and results	Comments: authors' conclusions, interesting features
Oldridge & Jones, 1983 ¹⁴⁵ Canada (journal)	Parallel group RCT. 120 patients randomised. Patients stratified by smoking status, occupation, leisure habits and number of prior infarctions before randomisation. These variables were shown to be predictors of dropout based on previous experience of this group	Patients randomised using a list of random numbers. Method of allocation concealment unclear. Blind assessment of outcomes unclear. Unclear whether comparison groups were similar at baseline. Losses to follow-up (defined as non-attendance at eight consecutive rehabilitation sessions) were similar in the intervention and control groups (2.1% and 1.6%)	Mixed CHD patients, MI 73%, CABG 16%, angina 12%. Mean age 50.5 years, all men	Usual comprehensive cardiac rehabilitation programme, plus self-management techniques including an agreement to participate in the programme for 6 months to be signed by the patient and coordinator, and self-report diaries to complete and be discussed with the coordinator at regular intervals. Diaries included six graphs for plotting self-monitored submaximal heart rates each month, at 33%, 50% and 75% of the maximum power output achieved in the previous exercise test, and six 24-hour recall questionnaires of daily activities on a randomly chosen day to be completed each month. In addition, a weight loss diary to fill in each week was given to those who initially agreed to lose weight, and similar diaries to record number of cigarettes smoked each day. Follow-up at the end of the intervention period of 6 months	Usual comprehensive cardiac rehabilitation programme	Compliance defined as attendance at 60% or more of the scheduled 48 supervised cardiac rehabilitation sessions. (If any patient failed to attend four consecutive sessions they were contacted by telephone and urged to continue.) Data presented as intention to treat. Compliance rate was 54% in the intervention group, and 42% in the control group; these rates were not statistically significant. Attendance of dropouts was similar in the intervention and control groups (21% vs 16%) and was also similar for compliers (74% vs 76%). Not all patients in the intervention group signed the agreement to participate. Compliance was significantly higher in the 48 subjects who signed (65%), than in the 15 who refused (20%)	Overall, no improvement in compliance with rehabilitation sessions was seen in patients randomised to a programme of self-management techniques, including signed agreement and diaries. In a subgroup analysis, the author found higher compliance rates in those patients in the intervention group who signed the agreement to participate than in those who did not, and suggested the need for further investigation of self-management compliance-improving strategies	

continued

Authors, year and country (publication type)	Study type and size	Study quality	Participants' case-mix, % men, mean age (SD), ethnicity if stated	Intervention: details including setting, staff involved, intensity, follow-up period for outcome assessment	Comparison group: details of usual care	Principal outcome measure and results	Other outcomes and results	Comments: authors' conclusions, interesting features
Daltroy, 1985 ¹⁴⁶ USA (journal)	Parallel group RCT, 174 patients randomised	Method of randomisation and allocation concealment unclear. Outcome assessors were blind to group allocation, and comparison groups were similar at baseline. No losses to follow-up reported at 3 months, the period at which most data are presented. Study was powered to detect a 14% difference in attendance over 3 months	Mixed CHD patients, 81% MI, 63% with a history of angina, 17% post-CABG. Mean age 53.8 years, 88% men, 95% white	Oral persuasive communication and education intervention to improve patient adherence to exercise regimens. Intervention developed from interviews with previous patients and their spouses to elicit the most common beliefs of benefits and drawbacks to the exercise programme. Patients in the intervention group received an oral persuasive communication on the telephone in scripted counselling format to: convince them of the benefits of regular exercise, warn them of likely drawbacks so that expectations would be realistic, acquaint them with methods used by other patients to cope with drawbacks, and elicit an oral commitment to attend at least two classes per week for the first 6 weeks. In addition, patients received a mailed written persuasive communication to reinforce these points. Spouses also received telephone counselling to encourage the patient to attend and discuss methods that other patients spouses found useful. A written communication to reinforce these points was also sent to the spouse to increase the spouse's support. Patients also received a pamphlet with information on benefits and drawbacks of exercise. All communication was tailored to individual patients based on data collected by questionnaire at baseline	Comparison group patients and spouses received the same pamphlet with information on the benefits and drawbacks of exercise, as the intervention group. This was done so all patients would have the same inducement to enter the programme. It was thought unlikely that this single intervention would produce lasting behavioural change	Attendance at exercise sessions over 3 months. Attendance for patients in the intervention group was 63.8%, and 62.2% in the comparison group. Subgroup analysis revealed that among the intervention group, attendance was greater among better educated patients. Spouse participation, age, gender and occupation were not associated with attendance, although the numbers in these subgroups are likely to be too small to draw firm conclusions	Overall, no significant improvement in attendance at exercise sessions with the intervention. There is some suggestion that educational level is a factor associated with attendance	

continued

Authors, year and country (publication type)	Study type and size	Study quality	Participants' case-mix, % men, mean age (SD), ethnicity if stated	Intervention: details including setting, staff involved, intensity, follow-up period for outcome assessment	Comparison group: details of usual care	Principal outcome measure and results	Other outcomes and results	Comments: authors' conclusions, interesting features
Mahler <i>et al.</i> 1999 ¹⁴⁷ USA (journal)	Parallel group RCT, two intervention groups and one control group. 215 patients randomised	Method of randomisation and allocation concealment unclear. Blind assessment of outcomes unclear. Unclear whether comparison groups were similar at baseline, as demographic data are not presented separately for each group. Overall losses to follow-up at 3 months were 9%	Consecutive elective first time CABG, mean age 61.4 (3.2 years), 86.5% men, 83.3% white	Videotape intervention post-surgery, shortly before discharge to enhance compliance with exercise and diet. Two videotape interventions: (1) Mastery Tape: depicts patients as calm and confident at the time of hospital discharge, making steady progress with no complications during 6 months, and adjusting to the recommended exercise and low-fat diet with relative ease; (2) Coping Tape: edited so the same patients mention concerns they are experiencing about hospital release and cope with effort, but successfully, with a variety of difficulties (e.g. fatigue, diet changes), so the recovery is portrayed as a steady forward progression of ups and downs. Exercise and dietary compliance assessed at 1 and 3 months postdischarge	Standard discharge preparation from one of the two hospitals where recruitment took place. No attempt was made to interfere with this. Consisted almost exclusively of advice not to lift too much, and instructions regarding the importance of exercise and maintaining a low-fat diet	Compliance with lifestyle changes. Exercise compliance assessed with a simple questionnaire of leisure-time exercise (how many times in the past 7 days they participated in light, moderate and strenuous exercise). Dietary compliance was assessed from the cholesterol-saturated fat subscale of the diet habit survey. At 3 months exercise compliance was improved with both interventions ($p < 0.05$), but improvements were greatest for the Coping Tape at 1 month for moderate exercise, and at 3 months for strenuous exercise. Both intervention groups showed a reduction in dietary cholesterol and saturated fat at 1 month ($p < 0.05$), but no differences were seen at 3 months	Anxiety and self-efficacy beliefs. Hypothesised that these would affect compliance	The authors hypothesised that either tape would result in improved outcomes compared with control, but also that the Coping Tape would exhibit the highest self-efficacy beliefs and greatest compliance. They concluded that viewing either tape proved to be an effective method for increasing dietary and exercise compliance during the first 3 months post-surgery

continued

Authors, year and country (publication type)	Study type and size	Study quality	Participants' case-mix, % men, mean age (SD), ethnicity if stated	Intervention: details including setting, staff involved, intensity, follow-up period for outcome assessment	Comparison group: details of usual care	Principal outcome measure and results	Other outcomes and results	Comments: authors' conclusions, interesting features
Aish & Isenberg, 1996, ¹⁴⁸ Canada (journal)	Parallel group RCT, 104 patients randomised	Method of randomisation and allocation concealment unclear. Comparison groups were similar at baseline. Blind assessment of outcomes unclear. Losses to follow-up not reported	MI patients, majority first MI. Patients recruited while in hospital. Mean age 62 (11) years, 60% men	Nursing intervention of nutritional self-care based on Orem's theory. ¹⁷⁶ Home visit to collect baseline 3-day diet record, assess food habits and provide information about nutritional goals for healthy hearts, and determine whether these were being met. Suggestions for changes given and a commitment on the part of the patient sought to make these changes. Three follow-up telephone calls over 6 weeks and a further home visit to collect 3-day diet record and assess food habits at 7 weeks postdischarge. Data compared between baseline and 7 weeks postdischarge	Control group received follow-up telephone calls and home visit at 7 weeks to collect data on 3-day dietary record and assess food habits. Advice about diet was not given unless the patient introduced the subject	Adherence to dietary advice assessed from dietary record and food habits questionnaire. Total fat and saturated fat percentage of calories was significantly reduced in the intervention group ($p < 0.01$). Significant improvement on the food habits questionnaire was seen in the intervention group ($p < 0.05$)	Appraisal of self care and eating habits which showed improvement with the intervention, and self-efficacy for healthy eating, which showed no change with the intervention	The authors conclude that this nursing intervention was effective at supporting healthy eating and patients' self-care agency

continued

Authors, year and country (publication type)	Study type and size	Study quality	Participants' case-mix, % men, mean age (SD), ethnicity if stated	Intervention: details including setting, staff involved, intensity, follow-up period for outcome assessment	Comparison of usual care	Principal outcome measure and results	Other outcomes and results	Comments: authors' conclusions, interesting features
Ashe, 1993 ¹⁴⁹ USA (PhD thesis)	Quasi RCT, 41 patients randomised	Allocation to groups by presenting patients with a packet containing a form coded A or B. Blind assessment of outcomes unclear. Similarity of groups at baseline unclear. Overall losses to follow-up 22%	Subjects recruited from a phase 2 cardiac rehabilitation programme. Mixed cardiac patients including MI, CABG, angina and patients with valve problems. Mean age 62 (range 33–77) years, gender not mentioned, 95% white	Motivational relapse prevention intervention received during the course of the cardiac rehabilitation programme. The cardiac rehabilitation programme consisted of three weekly exercise sessions of 30–40 minutes over 2–3 months. The intervention was started after four or five exercise sessions. The intervention was based on Marlatt and Gordon's model. ¹⁷⁷ Patients received individual sessions, one a week for 3 weeks. Session 1: using pretest information, factors found to interfere with adherence were introduced. Patients discussed their perceptions on the value of exercise, listed their goals for the programme and anticipated outcomes. Session 2: patients were introduced to decision-making concepts and cognitive interference factors. Discussion with regard to coping with 'slips' and introduction to appropriate ways to reframe perspectives. Patients filled in daily activity sheets. Session 3: focused on the importance of lifestyle balance. Patients were asked to refer to daily activity sheets to introduce concepts of shoulds and wants. Stressors were identified that may impact on lifestyle balance and discussed, as was the importance of positive thinking and use of medication. Patients also took part in a stress management exercise and relaxation procedure	During the course of the exercise programme patients received a 'benign' education intervention, which covered basic exercise concepts, guidelines for proper exercise participation, exercise tips and handouts, and the benefits of exercise	Total adherence to the maximum number of exercise sessions. This was 90% in the intervention group and 89% in the control group (not significant)	Various psychological measures used to determine relationships with attendance	Many hypotheses tested with relatively small number of patients. The authors conclude that they found no differences between groups on measures of adherence, self-motivation, self-efficacy or internal health locus of control

continued

Authors, year and country (publication type)	Study type and size	Participants' case-mix, % men, mean age (SD), ethnicity if stated	Intervention: details including setting, staff involved, intensity, follow-up period for outcome assessment	Comparison group: details of usual care	Principal outcome measure and results	Other outcomes and results	Comments: authors' conclusions, interesting features
Hopper, 1995 ¹⁵⁰ USA (PHD thesis)	Parallel group RCT, 80 patients randomised	Mixed CHD patients: 49% MI, 16% CABG, 3% angioplasty, 8% MI and CABG, 10% MI and angioplasty, 15% MI, CABG Mean age 58 years, 83% men	During the 12 months following cardiac rehabilitation patients received monthly structured telephone interviews with a cardiac nurse or an exercise physiologist from the rehabilitation team. Interviews provided social support and encouragement, lasted for about 15 minutes, and addressed the areas of consistent exercise, maintenance of a healthy diet, consistency with medication, knowledge of current blood pressure and cholesterol levels, and symptoms that required medical attention. Health professionals provided assistance if immediate care was required. Postal questionnaire follow-up 12 months after completion of CR programmes	No support or telephone calls after CR from rehabilitation staff	Exercise habit, intention to exercise and conditions that facilitated or discouraged the performance of exercise assessed by self-completed questionnaire. No difference in exercise habit or intention to exercise associated with the intervention. Conditions that facilitated the performance of exercise were improved in the intervention group compared with control ($p < 0.05$)	Exercise confidence scale (self-efficacy), personal attitudes scale (depression), resting and exercise blood pressure, blood lipids and graded maximal exercise test. No differences between intervention and control	The author concludes that personal independence of participants after a CR programme can be improved by means of telephone contact conducted after conclusion of the programme

continued

Authors, year and country (publication type)	Study type and size	Study quality	Participants' case-mix, % men, mean age (SD), ethnicity if stated	Intervention: details including setting, staff involved, intensity, follow-up period for outcome assessment	Comparison group: details of usual care	Principal outcome measure and results	Other outcomes and results	Comments: authors' conclusions, interesting features
Duncan <i>et al.</i> , 2001 ¹⁵¹ USA (conference proceedings)	Parallel group RCT, eight patients randomised. Feasibility study, hence small numbers	No details of method of randomisation, allocation concealment, blinding of outcome assessors, comparability of groups at baseline or losses to follow-up	Heart failure patients who were currently participating in a cardiac rehabilitation programme. No details of age or gender, mean ejection fraction 24%	Cardiac rehabilitation plus behavioural feedback intervention on dietary sodium intake. Feedback given on a 3-day dietary log of sodium intake, discussion of problem-solving strategies to reduce future sodium intake	Patients in the rehabilitation programme completed the 3-day dietary log on sodium intake	Repeat of the 3-day dietary log of sodium intake at the end of the intervention period, and completion of the beliefs about diet instrument (measure of benefits and barriers related to dietary sodium adherence). Sodium intake was significantly less in the intervention group (1569 vs 2836 mg, $p < 0.05$), and these patients identified significantly fewer barriers to adhering to sodium recommendations		Very small feasibility study with only four patients randomised to each group. Intervention of behavioural feedback had positive effects on sodium intake and attitudes towards adherence to recommended sodium levels
Leslie & Schuster, 1991 ¹⁵² USA (journal)	Quasi RCT, 30 patients randomised	Alternate allocation to intervention or control. Blind assessment of outcomes unclear. The comparison groups were similar at baseline in terms of age and gender but there were more CABG and fewer MI patients in the control group. There was a 7% overall loss to follow-up over an 8-week period	Mixed CHD patient: MI 25%, CABG 43%, angioplasty 18%, other coronary disease 14%. Mean age 55.6 years, 71% men	Contingency contracting. Contracting in this study is defined as a written contract negotiated with the patient, stating how long they will exercise for to maintain their heart rate at a certain level, on how many days that week, in return for a reward. Patients chose rewards that were generally acceptable providing they were not damaging to health. Examples included dietary recipes, T-shirts or loan of exercise equipment. All contracting done by the education coordinator of the cardiac rehabilitation programme, with sessions lasting for 10 minutes each week for 8 weeks. Contract behaviours were designed to be attainable, and exercise sessions were routinely scheduled three times a week. Upon completion of the contract patients received their reward. Patients also received 1 hour of formal education each week. Follow-up assessment at 8 weeks	Patients in the comparison group received the same 1 hour per week of formal education as the intervention group	Exercise knowledge test and adherence to exercise sessions. There was a significant increase in exercise knowledge scores at 8 weeks in the intervention group, but no difference in attendance rates between the intervention and control groups (90% and 89%, respectively)		There was no effect of the intervention on programme attendance. The authors conclude that the increase in exercise knowledge suggests that the contingency contracting process may be an intervention worthy of consideration in addition to traditional group lectures

continued

Authors, year and country (publication type)	Study type and size	Study quality	Participants' case-mix, % men, mean age (SD), ethnicity if stated	Intervention: details including setting, staff involved, intensity, follow-up period for outcome assessment	Comparison group: details of usual care	Principal outcome measure and results	Other outcomes and results	Comments: authors' conclusions, interesting features
Miller et al., 1988, ¹⁴³ Miller, et al., 1989, ¹⁴⁴ USA (journals)	Quasi RCT. 115 patients randomised	Alternate allocation to intervention or control. Blind assessment of outcomes unclear. The comparison groups were similar at baseline. There was an 11% overall loss to follow-up over a 60-day period, and 30% loss to follow-up at 1 year	All patients recruited from inpatient cardiac rehabilitation programmes (one of three similar programmes) following a first uncomplicated MI. Age range 30–65 years, 81% men. Data available for only those patients followed up, not all those randomised	All patients had 10–15 days of cardiac rehabilitation in hospital, including advice on diet, activity, smoking and medication. At 30 days postdischarge nurses visited patients at home to deliver an intervention to improve medical regimen adherence which consisted of three steps: (1) Assessment: data obtained on patient self-assessment of attitudes and perceived beliefs of others towards regimen compliance, personal psychological and societal adjustments, and reported regimen compliance by patient and spouse, predischARGE and 30 days postdischarge. (2) Problem identification: data from step 1 were evaluated by the patient, spouse and nurse. Problem areas were defined and factors contributing to non-compliance were discussed. (3) Goal setting: on the basis of problems identified, alternative actions were discussed and a health plan with specific goals was developed. Assessment of compliance with medical regimen at follow-up home visits at 60 days and 1 year	All patients had 10–15 days of cardiac rehabilitation in hospital, including advice on diet, activity, smoking and medication. Patients interviewed before discharge and visited at home 30 days postdischarge to collect assessment data as for the intervention group. Assessment of compliance with medical regimen at follow-up home visits at 60 days and 1 year	Compliance with medical regimen, divided into diet, smoking, activity, stress and medications. Various health behaviour and attitude scales used to assess this. No significant differences were seen between intervention and control groups at 60 days or 1 year postdischarge	The authors conclude that no differences were found between the intervention or control groups for medical regimen adherence. The authors observed that attitudes and perceived beliefs of others were predictive of adherence and should be included in any rehabilitation programme. Repeated self-evaluation questionnaires and nurse visits may have acted as an intervention in the control group	

continued

Authors, year and country (publication type)	Study type and size	Study quality	Participants' case-mix, % men, mean age (SD), ethnicity if stated	Intervention: details including setting, staff involved, intensity, follow-up period for outcome assessment	Comparison group: details of usual care	Principal outcome measure and results	Other outcomes and results	Comments: authors' conclusions, interesting features
Lack, 1985 ¹⁵³ USA (PhD thesis)	Quasi RCT, 48 patients randomised, data presented for 34 completers	Patients randomly assigned to intervention or control as they presented themselves. On occasions where there were insufficient numbers to form an intervention group, the authors departed from their standard randomisation and priority was given to the intervention group, hence this group is larger ($n = 22$ vs $n = 12$). Blinding of outcome assessors unclear. Comparison groups were similar at baseline. Overall losses to follow-up 29%	Patients referred to cardiac rehabilitation. Mixed CHD patients: 62% MI, 24% CABG, 15% both. Mean age 59 (range 28–72 years), 86.8% men	12-week psychotherapy intervention and its impact on patient compliance with prescribed regimen in the cardiac rehabilitation setting. Patients received the intervention when they first started the cardiac rehabilitation session. Intervention consisted of 90-minute sessions once a week for 3 months, or 12 or 15 sessions of insight-orientated group psychotherapy. The primary focus was to help the group to communicate thoughts and feelings with the associated affects. The therapist created an atmosphere that was supportive, cooperative and goal directed. The secondary focus was to highlight and promote change in those behaviours and styles of relating that reflected a maladaptive control orientation, e.g. hesitancy or refusal to comply with physician recommendations, or resistance to group participation. Period of follow-up at end of intervention period of 3 months	Control group received usual cardiac rehabilitation	Physiological markers of compliance with exercise (heart rate and blood pressure). Attendance at prescribed exercise sessions, and self-report of exercise at home: rated as poor (once a week for less than 20 minutes or none, score 0–1), good (three times a week for 20–30 minutes, score 2) or excellent (more than three times a week for more than 30 minutes, score 3). Mean scores for self-report measures of compliance were 2.57 and 2.37 for the intervention and control groups, respectively, over the 3 month period. The intervention group attended 88.4% of the prescribed exercise sessions, the control group 75.7% ($p < 0.05$)	The authors conclude that the analyses showed no effect of the psychotherapy intervention on patient compliance measured by physiological or self-report measures. They did, however, demonstrate that patients receiving the intervention attended significantly more prescribed exercise sessions	

continued

Authors, year and country (publication type)	Study type and size	Study quality	Participants' case-mix, % men, mean age (SD), ethnicity if stated	Intervention: details including setting, staff involved, intensity, follow-up period for outcome assessment	Comparison group: details of usual care	Principal outcome measure and results	Other outcomes and results	Comments: authors' conclusions, interesting features
Marshall et al., 1986 ¹⁵⁴ USA (journal)	Non-randomised trial, 60 patients studied	Data were collected from controls first ($n = 30$) and then intervention patients ($n = 30$). Comparison groups were similar at baseline. Sampling was prospective and inclusion criteria were specified. Losses to follow-up not reported	CABG patients. Elective CABG performed by the same group of surgeons. Mean age 59 (range 46–78 years), 70% men	Structured teaching programme to increase patients' knowledge and compliance to medication, diet, smoking cessation and exercise post surgery. Teaching guide developed by nurses with considerable experience with this patient group, and used by nurses. Follow-up assessment at 4–6 weeks postsurgery	Received teaching by unstructured method	Compliance with diet, medication, smoking cessation and activity, and knowledge. Compliance assessed by self-report. Patients were assigned a score on follow-up visit of compliance based on individual risk factors. Overall compliance scores were 86.8 in the intervention group, and 79.5 in the control group ($p < 0.05$). Compliance was better in the intervention than in the control group for activity (15.6 vs 7 blocks walked, $p < 0.005$). None of the patients in the intervention group reported non-compliance with any of the risk factors measured	Knowledge scores post surgery were similar for the structured and unstructured teaching groups	The authors conclude that overall compliance and activity levels were significantly higher postsurgery in the structured teaching group
Huerin et al., 1998 ¹⁵⁵ Argentina (conference proceedings)	Non-randomised trial, 509 patients studied, intervention group $n = 229$, control group $n = 280$	Comparison groups were similar at baseline and sampling was prospective. No further details are given	Patients with CHD. Mean age 56 (SD 10) years, 67.5% men	Traditional rehabilitation and an adherence strategy which included a signed commitment to rehabilitation, family involvement, sports and recreational activities to increase patient commitment and involvement in a variety of activities, and three weekly talks on CHD-related topics. Follow-up at 12, 24 and 52 weeks	Traditional rehabilitation	Compliance expressed as relative risks, defined as attendance at 66% or more sessions. 12 weeks, RR 2.3 (95% CI 1.8 to 2.9), 24 weeks, RR 2.9 (2.3 to 3.7), 52 weeks, RR 4.25 (3.2 to 5.6) (log-rank test between strategies $p < 0.001$)	The authors conclude that at each time-point, the adherence strategy group showed significantly better compliance with cardiac rehabilitation	

continued

Authors, year and country (publication type)	Study type and size	Study quality	Participants' case-mix, % men, mean age (SD), ethnicity if stated	Intervention: details including setting, staff involved, intensity, follow-up period for outcome assessment	Comparison group: details of usual care	Principal outcome measure and results	Other outcomes and results	Comments: authors' conclusions, interesting features
McKenna et al., 1998 ¹⁵⁶ UK (conference proceedings)	Two study designs: non-randomised trial, exercise vs. standard rehabilitation, and an evaluation of a women-only programme compared with historical controls. No information on patient numbers	No more details presented about how the studies were conducted	M1 patients, mean age 62 years, 75% men. Mean age of the women-only group was 60 years	Two interventions examined. (1) Low-intensity exercise to increase compliance, offered to patients who were previously unable to take part in standard exercise owing to co-morbidity. The comparison group were standard rehabilitation. (2) Women-only groups: compliance with rehabilitation. Historically compliance in women with standard rehabilitation was 6%	Standard rehabilitation	Attendance at cardiac rehabilitation. Attendance was 82% in the low-intensity exercise group and 34% in the standard rehabilitation comparison group. Attendance in the women-only group was 75%		The authors conclude that tailored exercise for different patient groups increased compliance with the exercise component of standard rehabilitation. Patient numbers not reported. The magnitude of changes cannot be assessed
Erling & Oldridge, 1985 ¹⁵⁷ Canada (conference proceedings)	Before- and after-study	Prospective sampling, inclusion criteria not specified. No other details about how the study was conducted	CHD patients: No other details	Spousal support programme: spousal participation in cardiac rehabilitation. Not all spouses attended, so comparators are baseline before spouse participation (n = 30), spouse participation in cardiac rehabilitation (n = 30) and no spouse participation (n = 30). Follow-up at 6 months	Patient compliance before introduction of the spouse support programme	Attendance at cardiac rehabilitation sessions defined as those who attended at least 50% of the sessions. Before the spousal intervention attendance was 44%, after the spousal support programme where the spouse participated in rehabilitation patient attendance was 90% (p < 0.001), and where the spouse did not attend this was 67%		The authors conclude that even for patients whose spouses did not attend rehabilitation there were beneficial effects of group support when the spousal programme was running compared with the pre-spousal programme

Appendix 12

Studies excluded from the review of methods to improve adherence to cardiac rehabilitation

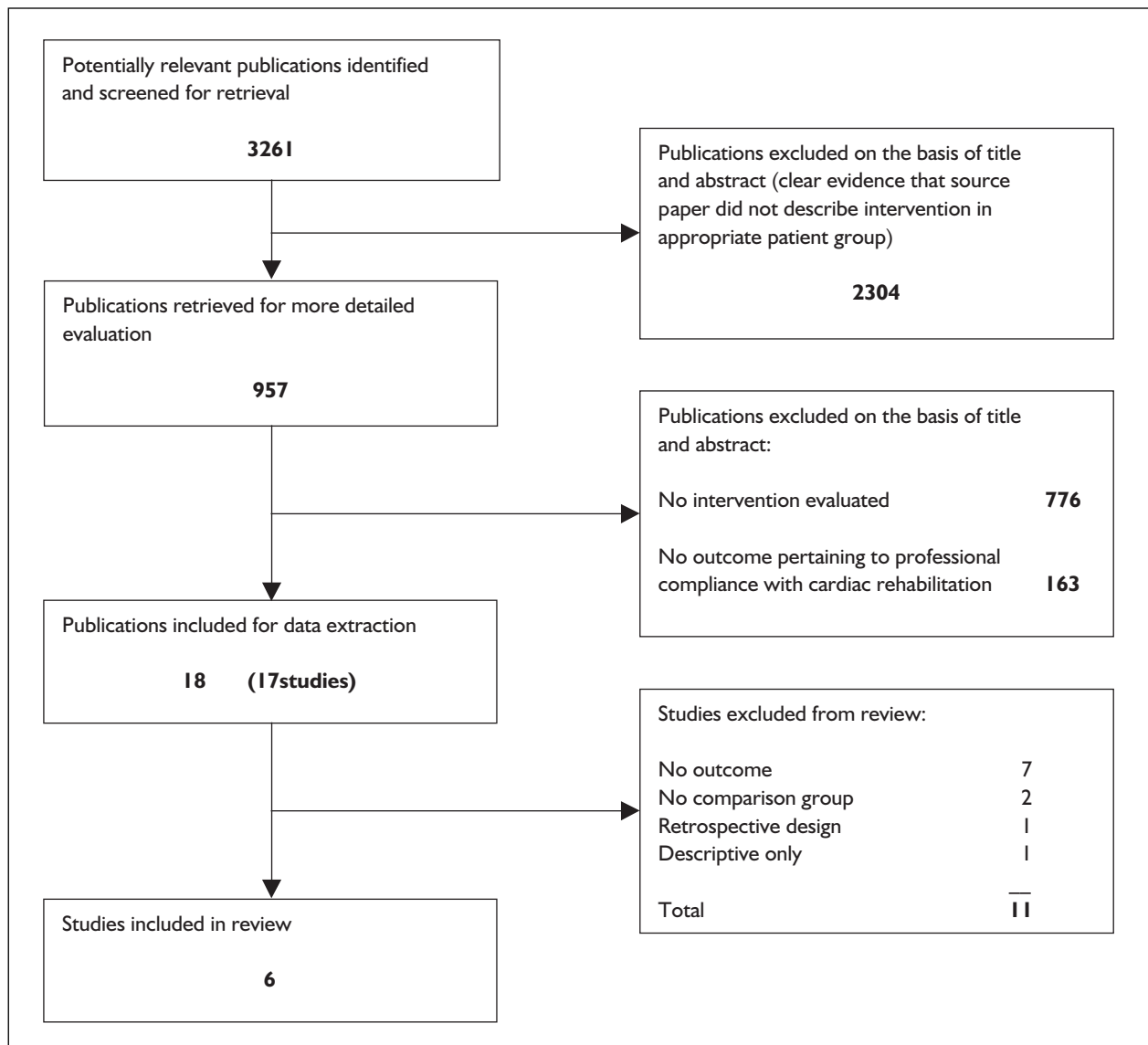
Authors, year	Intervention	Reason for exclusion
Ades <i>et al.</i> , 2000 ¹³⁴	Home-based telephone-monitored CR compared with outpatient CR	Authors report on effectiveness of CR formats. Patients were not randomised but allocated to home-based telephone monitored CR if living in remote area or unable to attend outpatient CR due to work or time constraints
Baile & Engel 1978 ¹⁷³	Follow-up of non-compliant coronary care unit patients	No comparison group
Barnason & Zimmerman, 1995 ¹⁶⁷	Postdischarge telephone follow-up or group teaching	No relevant outcome
Blumenthal <i>et al.</i> , 1988 ¹⁵⁹	Comparison of high- and low-intensity exercise training	Comparison of rehabilitation intensities. Authors report on effectiveness. RCT of patients representative of most US CR programmes
Brubaker <i>et al.</i> , 1996 ¹⁶⁰	Comparison of standard and extended length CR	Comparison of rehabilitation duration. Authors report benefit from continuing CR for > 1 year. Retrospective non-randomised comparison of patients who attended 3 months or > 1 year of CR
Campbell <i>et al.</i> , 1998 ¹²⁶	Nurse-run clinics in general practice	No relevant outcome
Carlson <i>et al.</i> , 2000 ⁷³	Comparison of traditional and partly home-based CR	Comparison of rehabilitation formats. Authors report increased total exercise sessions with partly home-based programme. Randomised trial
DeBusk <i>et al.</i> , 1985 ¹³¹	Comparison of home and group exercise training	Comparison of rehabilitation formats. Authors report on effectiveness. Randomised trial
Dracup <i>et al.</i> , 1984 ¹⁶²	Group counselling	No relevant outcomes.
Gordon & Haskell, 1997 ¹⁶⁸	Physician-supervised, nurse case-manager CR model	No comparison group. No relevant outcomes
Labrador <i>et al.</i> , 1998 ¹⁶⁹	Physician-directed, nurse-supervised case-management programme	No relevant outcomes
Lee <i>et al.</i> , 1996 ¹⁶¹	Comparison of high- and low-intensity exercise training	Comparison of rehabilitation intensities. Authors report on effectiveness. Randomised trial
Linde & Janz, 1979 ¹⁶⁴	Postoperative teaching programme	No relevant outcomes
Mehta <i>et al.</i> , 2000 ¹²¹	Quality improvement initiative: critical care pathway, patient education tool and staff education	Retrospective study. Allocation to groups according to physician preference
Penckofer & Llewellyn, 1989 ¹⁶³	Comparison of education by structured and unstructured methods	Comparison of education interventions. Authors report little extra benefit from structured teaching. Not randomised
Senaratne <i>et al.</i> , 2001 ¹⁷¹	Lipid management by cardiac rehabilitation nurse	Outside search period. No relevant outcome
Skof <i>et al.</i> , 2001 ¹⁷²	Comparison of late outpatient and inpatient CR	No relevant outcome

continued

Authors, year	Intervention	Reason for exclusion
Sparks <i>et al.</i> , 1993 ¹⁵⁸	Home-based telephone-monitored CR compared with outpatient CR	Comparison of rehabilitation formats. Authors report on effectiveness. Randomised trial.
Starkey <i>et al.</i> , 2000 ¹⁷⁵	Computer-facilitated secondary prevention programme	No comparison group
Stern & Cleary, 1981 ¹⁷⁴	Low-level exercise programme	No comparison group
Uden <i>et al.</i> , 1993 ¹⁶⁵	Nurse support	No relevant outcome
Vale <i>et al.</i> , 2000 ¹⁷⁰	Telephone coaching by dietitian	No relevant outcome
van Elderen <i>et al.</i> , 1994 ¹⁶⁶	Group health education programme	No relevant outcome

Appendix 13

Flow diagram of the systematic review of interventions to improve professional compliance with cardiac rehabilitation (QUOROM statement flow diagram)



Appendix 14

Studies evaluating interventions to improve professional compliance with cardiac rehabilitation

Studies are listed in terms of study design and the hierarchy of evidence, with RCTs first.

Authors, year and country (publication type)	Study type and size	Study quality	Participants' case-mix, % men, mean age (SD), ethnicity if stated	Intervention: details including setting, staff involved, intensity, follow-up period for outcome assessment	Comparison group: details of usual care	Principal outcome measure and results	Other outcomes and results	Comments: authors' conclusions, interesting features
Jolly, et al., 1999 ⁰⁴ UK (journal) Also Bradley et al., 1997 ⁰² and Jolly et al., 1998 ⁰³	67 general practices randomised within strata (by fund-holding status, distance from local CR programme and number of whole-time partner equivalents), 277 patients from randomised intervention practices and 320 from control practices	No details of randomisation procedure. Follow-up of patients carried out by a nurse not responsible for delivering the intervention to the patient's practice. Power calculations reported for serum cholesterol change, distance walked and smoking. Comparison groups were similar at baseline. Loss to follow-up was 10% in intervention group and 9% in control group. Analysis was by intention to treat but practices and excluded deaths	Patients registered with 67 general practices in a specified geographical area. Patients admitted to hospital with MI (71%) or with angina of recent onset (<3 months) seen in hospital (29%). Patients were judged well enough to participate by medical and nursing staff on the ward or in clinic	Specialist cardiac liaison nurses co-ordinated the transfer of care between hospital and general practice. The liaison nurse saw patients in hospital and encouraged them to see the practice nurse after discharge. Support was provided to practice nurses by regular contact, including a telephone call shortly before patient discharge to discuss care and book a first follow-up visit to the practice. Practice nurses were encouraged to telephone the liaison nurse to discuss problems or to seek advice on clinical or organisational issues. Each patient was given a patient-held record card which prompted and guided follow-up at standard intervals	No contact between specialist cardiac liaison nurses and general practices. Not explicitly stated, but understood to be no recommendation to see practice nurse and no patient-held record	Serum cholesterol, blood pressure, distance walked in 6 minutes and smoking cessation did not differ between groups. Body mass index was slightly lower in the intervention group. More patients in the intervention group attended at least one outpatient CR session compared with controls (42% vs 24%, $p < 0.001$). The difference was most marked in angina patients (42% vs 10%)		The programme providing coordinated follow-up care by specialist cardiac liaison nurses did not improve health outcomes, but was effective in promoting at least one outpatient CR session attendance

continued

Authors, year and country (publication type)	Study type and size	Study quality	Participants' case-mix, % men, mean age (SD), ethnicity if stated	Intervention: details including setting, staff involved, intensity, follow-up period for outcome assessment	Comparison group: details of usual care	Principal outcome measure and results	Other outcomes and results	Comments: authors' conclusions, interesting features
Suskin <i>et al.</i> , 2000 ¹²⁴ Canada (conference abstract)	RCT, 50 patients randomised	No information on randomisation procedure or baseline characteristics of the two patient groups	Post-MI patients. 76% men	Written endorsement by attending physician	Generic endorsement	Self-reported commitment to participate in CR was 62% in those who received the physician endorsement compared with 38% in those receiving a generic endorsement ($p = 0.08$)	No effect of method of delivery (in-person vs not)	The authors suggest further study required to evaluate whether physician endorsement improves CR participation
Kalayi <i>et al.</i> , 1999 ²² UK (journal)	Before- and after-study. Comparison of CR referral rates before intervention (298 patients) and after intervention (263 patients)	No information on baseline characteristics of the two patient groups	Post-MI patients. No information on age or gender of groups	Electronic referral pathway with feedback to ward staff on referral rates. The referral pathway was initiated when a CR referral screen was automatically flagged up on the electronic patient record of those patients with a discharge diagnosis of MI	Before implementation of referral pathway intervention	After intervention referral increased from 194/298 (65%) to 208/263 (79%) ($p = 0.0002$)	Monthly referral rate at start of study 15/37 (40%). Within 3 months of intervention monthly referral 35/39 (90%)	The authors note that as well as improving patient care the use of electronic referral and feedback of referral rates was of benefit to staff, saving time referring and identifying patients
Mosca <i>et al.</i> , 1998 ¹¹ USA (conference abstract)	Before- and after-study. Comparison of outpatient CR participation rates in two 6-month periods with a total of 199 patients	No information on baseline characteristics of the two groups	All patients post-MI. Mean age 61 years, 68% men	Critical care pathway prompting referral for outpatient CR	Before implementation of critical care pathway	Overall participation at outpatient CR was 54%, as determined by patient self-report. The critical care pathway was associated with a non-significant increase in outpatient CR participation (OR = 1.9, 95% CI 0.6 to 5.5)	The authors conclude that a systems approach, involving a prompt for outpatient CR referral as part of a discharge critical care pathway, may potentially increase rates of participation in CR for women	

continued

Authors, year and country (publication type)	Study type and size	Study quality	Participants' case-mix, % men, mean age (SD), ethnicity if stated	Intervention: details including setting, staff involved, intensity, follow-up period for outcome assessment	Comparison group: details of usual care	Principal outcome measure and results	Other outcomes and results	Comments: authors' conclusions, interesting features
Caulin-Glaser & Schmeizel, 2000 ¹²³ USA (conference abstract)	Before- and after-study. Comparison of outpatient CR participation rates in two 5-month periods. Patient numbers not specified	No information on baseline characteristics of the two patient groups	Post-revascularisation patients. No information on age or gender of groups	Educational intervention for healthcare providers on the comprehensive nature and benefits of CR, with particular emphasis on women. Consisted of grand rounds for medical and nursing staff, monthly review of health outcomes and cost-effectiveness of CR with clinical cardiology council, placement of CR information in examination offices, and instructions for nurses to discuss CR with patients and encourage discussion of referral with physicians	Before implementation of educational intervention	In-hospital referral increased by 50% ($p < 0.05$). Physician office referral increased by 61% ($p < 0.05$). Male and female referral rates increased by 41% ($p < 0.05$) and 65% ($p < 0.05$), respectively		The authors conclude that appropriately designed educational interventions are successful in altering behaviours of healthcare personnel and improving referral to CR

continued

Authors, year and country (publication type)	Study type and size	Study quality	Participants' case-mix, % men, mean age (SD), ethnicity if stated	Intervention: details including setting, staff involved, intensity, follow-up period for outcome assessment	Comparison group: details of usual care	Principal outcome measure and results	Other outcomes and results	Comments: authors' conclusions, interesting features
Scott et al., 2000 ¹¹ Australia (journal)	Before- and after-study. Comparison of clinical indicators in three periods: preintervention (133 patients), implementation of intervention (271 patients) and postintervention (245 patients)	Pre- and postintervention groups were similar at baseline, but no information was reported for the intervention period. Outpatient CR programme was not fully operational in the preintervention period. Authors assumed that patient characteristics, diagnostic methods and treatment modalities would remain essentially unchanged throughout the study	Post-MI patients. Patient characteristics only available for pre- and postintervention groups. Mean age 66 years, 66% men	Dissemination of evidence-based clinical guidelines for the management of AMI to hospital staff and GPs. Information on clinical indicators was fed back to all hospital consultant physicians, senior emergency staff, medical service directors and senior clinicians. As part of the feedback the observed proportion of patients receiving the treatments was compared with a quality threshold or minimum level of utilisation indicative of a reasonable standard of care. Local providers could compare and improve their own practice	Before dissemination of evidence-based clinical guidelines	Clinical indicator changes pre- to postintervention. No changes were seen in β -blocker, aspirin or angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitor use. Lipid-lowering drug use increased from 23% to 56% ($p < 0.003$). Outpatient CR service became operational at start of intervention period and showed a steady increase in utilisation rate from 24% to 54% ($p = 0.003$)		The authors suggest that clinical guidelines combined with feedback of clinical indicators to health professionals were useful in improving quality of care, including outpatient CR utilisation in MI patients. However, the improvement may be due to parallel changes in levels of provision

Appendix 15

Studies excluded from the review of interventions to improve professional compliance with cardiac rehabilitation

Authors, year	Intervention	Reason for exclusion
Axtell <i>et al.</i> , 2001 ¹⁹¹	Inclusion of pharmacist in MI care	Outcome: use of medication
Campbell <i>et al.</i> , 1998 ^{125,126}	Nurse-led clinic giving secondary prevention assessment and advice	Outcome: use of secondary prevention, not attendance at CR.
Feder <i>et al.</i> , 1999 ¹²⁷	General practices received letters with summary of effective secondary prevention with reference to local guidelines. Also prompts to patients	Outcomes: attendance at a general practice and drug prescribing, not CR
Hillert <i>et al.</i> , 2000 ¹⁹²	Risk factor management through physician education, participation and consensus development	No comparison group
Levknecht <i>et al.</i> , 1997 ¹¹⁶	Outpatient clinical pathway	No outcome data: descriptive
Linde & Janz, 1979 ¹⁶⁴	Nurse training to master's level in postoperative teaching programme	Inpatient programme. Outcome: patient knowledge and follow-up. Data not interpretable
McCarney <i>et al.</i> , 2000 ¹¹⁹	General practice database identifies patients for home visit by health visitor to improve secondary prevention	No data: descriptive
Mehta <i>et al.</i> , 2000 ¹²¹	Quality improvement initiative: critical care pathway; patient education tool and staff education	Retrospective study. Allocation to groups according to physician preference
Senaratne <i>et al.</i> , 2001 ¹⁷¹	Lipid management by cardiac rehabilitation nurse	Outside search period. Outcome: lipid levels
Starkey <i>et al.</i> , 2000 ¹⁷⁵	Computer-facilitated secondary prevention programme	No comparison group
Tod <i>et al.</i> , 1998 ¹¹⁷	Integration of primary and secondary care	No outcome data: descriptive

Appendix 16

Estimates for unit costs for different staff categories and grades

Staff category	Costs (£)						
	Salary ^d	Salary on-costs	Over-heads ^b	Capital costs ^c	Total hours worked per year ^c	Staff costs per hour ^d	Total costs per hour
Staff nurse B grade	11,820	1,507 ^e	2,216	1,288	1,575	8	11
Staff nurse E grade	18,222	2,323 ^e	2,216	1,288	1,575	13	15
Staff nurse F grade	21,010	2,679 ^e	2,216	2,263	1,575	15	18
Staff nurse G grade	23,948	3,053	2,216	2,263	1,575	17	20
Staff nurse H grade	26,540	3,384 ^e	2,216	2,263	1,575	19	22
Physiotherapist helper	10,865	1,130	2,216	2,775	1,584	8	11
Physiotherapist basic	17,202.50	2,193 ^f	2,216	4,302	1,512	13	17
Physiotherapist senior I	23,452	2,990	2,216	4,302	1,512	17	22
Physiotherapist senior II	20,670	2,635 ^f	2,216	4,302	1,512	15	20
Physiotherapist superintendent III	25,832.50	3,294 ^f	2,216	4,302	1,512	19	24
Physiotherapist superintendent IV	23,452.50	2,990 ^f	2,216	4,302	1,512	17	22
Sport scientist	22,767.50	2,903 ^f	2,216	4,302	1,512	17	21
Exercise physiologist (MTO 3)	20,647	2,632 ^f	2,216	4,302	1,512	15	20
Occupational therapist basic	17,202.50	2,193 ^g	2,216	4,302	1,512	13	17
Occupational therapist senior I/II	21,785	2,778	2,216	4,302	1,512	16	21
Occupational therapist head	26,467.50	3,375 ^g	2,216	4,302	1,512	20	24
Dietitian	21,785	2,778 ^e	2,216	3,606	1,554	16	20
Dietitian senior I/II	23,452.50	2,990 ^e	2,216	3,606	1,554	17	21
Pharmacist	32,983.50	4,205 ^e	2,216	3,606	1,554	24	28
GP	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	54	62
Medical consultant	67,064	9,664	24,320	4,161	1,640	47	64
Clinical psychologist	38,316	5,364	3,978	2,144	1,476	30	34
Cardiac technician (MTO 4)	25,118	3,203 ^e	2,216	4,302	1,512	19	23
Social worker	19,951	2,709	3,399	2,007	1,554	15	18
Secretary	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	10	13

^a Salaries information from www.nhscareers.nhs.uk, March 2002.¹⁹⁷ Salaries are based on the midpoint of the relevant scale prevailing at 1 April 2001, except for GP, medical consultant, secretary and social worker (source: Netten *et al.*, 2001¹⁹⁶). All costs are given as 2000/01 values (overheads, capital overheads).

^b Comprise estimates for indirect overheads (administrative services) (source: Netten *et al.*¹⁹⁶). Indirect overheads for all other staff for which Netten *et al.*¹⁹⁶ do not provide estimates are assumed to be the same as for staff in the same group.

^c Based on Netten *et al.*¹⁹⁶ Capital overheads for all other staff for which Netten *et al.*¹⁹⁶ do not provide estimates are assumed to be the same as for staff in the same group.

^d Comprises only salary and salary on-costs.

^e On-costs are estimated assuming the same on-costs/salary ratio as for staff nurse G grade.

^f On-costs are estimated assuming the same on-costs/salary ratio as for physiotherapist senior I.

^g On-costs are estimated assuming the same on-costs/salary ratio as for occupational therapist senior I/II.

MTO, medical technical officer.

Appendix 17

List of equipment

Costs of equipment for outpatient cardiac rehabilitation (phase 3), are shown below. (Source: cardiac rehabilitation programme, Bristol Royal Infirmary.) All prices include VAT.

Life Fitness upright cycle LC9100	£2770.65
Cardiosport watches 'Cardiosport Go' (×15)	£375.41
Reebok step (×2)	£78.00
Physio Med Rehab Bouncer	£57.57
Yellow Theraband exercise roll (50 yards)	£38.77
York Probells in carry case (×2)	£19.90
Theraband exercise ball (Antiburst) (45 cm) (×2)	£19.97
Pro Fitness exercise mats (×15)	£89.85
Physio Med rehab support rails	£46.94
Theraband exercise ball (Antiburst) (55 cm) (×2)	£27.02
Duflex deluxe Gym Mate	£82.19

Total: £3606.27 (VAT included)

Appendix 18

Staff input: average hours per week

TABLE 42 Average hours per week by staff category for centres in group 1 (more than five key staff)

Staff category	Centre 1.1	Centre 1.2	Centre 1.3	Centre 1.4	Centre 1.5	Centre 1.6	Centre 1.7	Centre 1.8	Centre 1.9	Centre 1.10
Nursing grade										
B										
E										
F	20.0	37.5		18.5				37.5		
G			38.0	37.5	37.5	26.0		37.5		37.5
H	37.5	37.5					18.0		37.5	
Physiotherapist										
Helper										
Basic									2.0	
Senior I		9.0	4.0	10.0	49.5		3.0	18.0		7.0
Senior II										
Superintendent III						26.0				
Superintendent IV	6.0									
Sport scientist										
Exercise physiologist		37.5	0.5							
Occupational therapist										
Basic									1.0	7.0
Senior			7.0			6.0	8.0	2.0		
Head	6.0									
Dietician					4.0		0.32			0.33
Senior dietitian	0.33	0.16	1.0	0.2		3.0		1.0	0.125	
Pharmacist	0.5	0.16	1.0	0.16	1.0	0.12	0.16	1.0	0.125	0.33
Physician ^a	0.15	0.2		0.41	3.0		0 ^b			
Clinical psychologist		0.75	4.0	0.16	0 ^b	0.5			1.0	0.33
Cardiac technician			3.0							4.0
Social worker								1.0		
Secretary			25.0			2.0	10.0	5.0		
Total	70.4	122.8	83.5	67.2	95.0	67.6	39.5	103.0	41.8	56.5

^a Includes cardiologists, consultants, clinical assistants and GPs.
^b Centres indicated the contribution of these staff groups in their questionnaire, but stated that their contribution was rather advisory and did not include any time involvement.

TABLE 43 Average hours per week by staff category for centres in group 2 (three to five key staff)

Staff category	Centre 2.1	Centre 2.2	Centre 2.3	Centre 2.4	Centre 2.5	Centre 2.6	Centre 2.7	Centre 2.8	Centre 2.9	Centre 2.10
Nursing grades										
B			9.5							
E			15.0					37.5		19.5
F	22.5	75.0					30.0			
G			75.0	10.0	2.0			37.5		37.0
H						37.5			20.0	
Physiotherapist										
Helper				6.0						14.0
Basic										
Senior I	10.0	4.0	11.0	6.0		2.0				21.0
Senior II					2.0		12.0			
Superintendent III										
Superintendent IV										
Sport scientist							6.0		13.0	
Exercise physiologist										
Occupational therapist										
Basic										
Senior				0.5						
Head										
Dietitian	0.25		0.25			0.15		0.16		1.0
Senior dietitian		3.0			0.62				1.0	
Pharmacist	0.25	1.0	0.25	0.5	0.32	0.04	1.0	0.16		
Physician ^a				0.5			7.01			
Clinical psychologist		3.0								
Cardiac technician		4.0								
Social worker							16.0			
Secretary			12.0		0.35				30.0	8.0
Total	33.0	90.0	123.0	23.5	5.3	39.7	72.0	75.3	64.0	100.5

^a Includes cardiologists, consultants, clinical assistants and GPs.

TABLE 44 Average hours per week by staff category for centres in group 3 (two or fewer key staff)

Staff category	Centre 3.1	Centre 3.2	Centre 3.3	Centre 3.4	Centre 3.5	Centre 3.6	Centre 3.7	Centre 3.8	Centre 3.9	Centre 3.10
Nursing grade										
B										
E										
F										30.0
G	4.0	52.5	21.0	2.0		12.0			1.0	
H					4.0					
Physiotherapist										
Helper										
Basic										
Senior I	14.0		6.0				2.0	1.0		4.0
Senior II				4.0	2.0	6.0				
Superintendent III										
Superintendent IV										
Sport scientist										4.0
Exercise physiologist										
Occupational therapist										
Basic										
Senior	1.0						2.0			
Head										
Dietitian										
Senior dietitian										
Pharmacist										
Physician ^a										
Clinical psychologist										
Cardiac technician			5.0							
Social worker										
Secretary						3.0				
Total	18.0	53.5	32.0	6.0	6.0	21.0	4.0	1.0	1.0	38.0

^a Includes cardiologists, consultants, clinical assistants and GPs.

Appendix 19

Referral, uptake and completion rates for 30 randomly selected UK cardiac rehabilitation programmes in 2000

	Group 1^a (n = 10)	Group 2^b (n = 10)	Group 3^c (n = 10)
Hours per patient	29.0 (8.9) <i>27.0</i> (21–48)	24.0 (8.6) <i>21.5</i> (15–38)	20.0 (12.3) <i>17.5</i> (6–48)
Patients referred to CR	282.4 (169.5) <i>289.5</i> (84–578)	352.5 (244.5) <i>255.5</i> (130–855)	170.7 (142.5) <i>150</i> (3–400)
Patients joined CR	157.3 (97.6) <i>148.0</i> (46–381)	194.3 (104.7) <i>171.5</i> (73–429)	97.9 (73.3) <i>103.5</i> (2–216)
% of referrals	55.7 <i>51.1</i>	55.1 <i>67.1</i>	57.3 <i>69.0</i>
Patients completed CR	126.3 (90.4) <i>104.5</i> 39–319	158.1 (100.8) <i>150.5</i> 44–392	88.8 (67.2) <i>92.5</i> 2–195
% of referrals	44.7 <i>36.0</i>	44.8 <i>58.9</i>	52 <i>61.6</i>
Data are shown as mean (SD) and median (in italics) (range).			
^a Centres with more than five key staff.			
^b Centres with three to five key staff.			
^c Centres with two or fewer key staff.			

Appendix 20

Average cost estimates for cardiac rehabilitation (detailed table)

Costs (£)	Group 1 ^a (n = 10)		Group 2 ^b (n = 10)		Group 3 ^c (n = 10)	
	Staff costs only	Total costs	Staff costs only	Total costs	Staff costs only	Total costs
Per year/centre	53,087 (18,251) <i>51,323</i> (26,658–85,869)	72,676 (25,485) <i>69,834</i> (37,183–118,299)	42,125 (24,059) <i>43,337</i> (3,607–78,526)	57,353 (32,146) <i>58,362</i> (5,932–105,763)	12,383 (12,688) <i>8,400</i> (714–38,157)	17,638 (16,752) <i>12,797</i> (1,888–50,886)
Per patient referred	243 (143) <i>175</i> (88–441)	330 (177) <i>245</i> (123–587)	137 (92) <i>113</i> (28–357)	186 (120) <i>156</i> (45–470)	127 (94) <i>105</i> (10–254)	249 (243) <i>156</i> (16–660)
Per patient joined	421 (187) <i>466</i> (159–777)	571 (246) <i>639</i> (221–948)	236 (167) <i>212</i> (36–651)	320 (217) <i>293</i> (59–856)	174 (132) <i>118</i> (26–382)	324 (299) <i>192</i> (44–944)
Per patient completed	542 (225) <i>553</i> (224–846)	738 (298) <i>750</i> (314–1118)	317 (228) <i>259</i> (48–716)	429 (295) <i>354</i> (79–947)	186 (133) <i>139</i> (26–382)	344 (295) <i>230</i> (44–944)
Per patient completed/hour	20 (9) <i>20</i> (5–33)	27 (12) <i>27</i> (7–45)	14 (11) <i>11</i> (1–38)	20 (14) <i>15</i> (2–49)	14 (15) <i>7</i> (1–40)	30 (41) <i>10</i> (1–110)

Data are shown as mean (SD) and median (in italics) (range).

^a Centres with more than five key staff.

^b Centres with three to five key staff.

^c Centres with two or fewer key staff.



Health Technology Assessment Programme

Prioritisation Strategy Group

Members

Chair, Professor Tom Walley, Director, NHS HTA Programme, Department of Pharmacology & Therapeutics, University of Liverpool	Professor Bruce Campbell, Consultant Vascular & General Surgeon, Royal Devon & Exeter Hospital	Dr John Reynolds, Clinical Director, Acute General Medicine SDU, Radcliffe Hospital, Oxford
	Professor Shah Ebrahim, Professor in Epidemiology of Ageing, University of Bristol	Dr Ron Zimmern, Director, Public Health Genetics Unit, Strangeways Research Laboratories, Cambridge

HTA Commissioning Board

Members

Programme Director, Professor Tom Walley, Director, NHS HTA Programme, Department of Pharmacology & Therapeutics, University of Liverpool	Professor John Brazier, Director of Health Economics, Sheffield Health Economics Group, School of Health & Related Research, University of Sheffield	Professor Peter Jones, Head of Department, University Department of Psychiatry, University of Cambridge	Professor Mark Sculpher, Professor of Health Economics, Centre for Health Economics, Institute for Research in the Social Services, University of York
Chair, Professor Shah Ebrahim, Professor in Epidemiology of Ageing, Department of Social Medicine, University of Bristol	Dr Andrew Briggs, Public Health Career Scientist, Health Economics Research Centre, University of Oxford	Professor Sallie Lamb, Research Professor in Physiotherapy/Co- Director, Interdisciplinary Research Centre in Health, Coventry University	Professor Martin Severs, Professor in Elderly Health Care, Portsmouth Institute of Medicine
Deputy Chair, Professor Jenny Hewison, Professor of Health Care Psychology, Academic Unit of Psychiatry and Behavioural Sciences, University of Leeds School of Medicine	Professor Nicky Cullum, Director of Centre for Evidence Based Nursing, Department of Health Sciences, University of York	Professor Julian Little, Professor of Epidemiology, Department of Medicine and Therapeutics, University of Aberdeen	Dr Jonathan Shapiro, Senior Fellow, Health Services Management Centre, Birmingham
Dr Jeffrey Aronson Reader in Clinical Pharmacology, Department of Clinical Pharmacology, Radcliffe Infirmary, Oxford	Dr Andrew Farmer, Senior Lecturer in General Practice, Department of Primary Health Care, University of Oxford	Professor Stuart Logan, Director of Health & Social Care Research, The Peninsula Medical School, Universities of Exeter & Plymouth	Ms Kate Thomas, Deputy Director, Medical Care Research Unit, University of Sheffield
Professor Ann Bowling, Professor of Health Services Research, Primary Care and Population Studies, University College London	Professor Fiona J Gilbert, Professor of Radiology, Department of Radiology, University of Aberdeen	Professor Tim Peters, Professor of Primary Care Health Services Research, Division of Primary Health Care, University of Bristol	Professor Simon G Thompson, Director, MRC Biostatistics Unit, Institute of Public Health, Cambridge
Professor Andrew Bradbury, Professor of Vascular Surgery, Department of Vascular Surgery, Birmingham Heartlands Hospital	Professor Adrian Grant, Director, Health Services Research Unit, University of Aberdeen	Professor Ian Roberts, Professor of Epidemiology & Public Health, Intervention Research Unit, London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine	Ms Sue Ziebland, Senior Research Fellow, Cancer Research UK, University of Oxford
	Professor F D Richard Hobbs, Professor of Primary Care & General Practice, Department of Primary Care & General Practice, University of Birmingham	Professor Peter Sandercock, Professor of Medical Neurology, Department of Clinical Neurosciences, University of Edinburgh	

Diagnostic Technologies & Screening Panel

Members

<p>Chair, Dr Ron Zimmern, Director of the Public Health Genetics Unit, Strangeways Research Laboratories, Cambridge</p>	<p>Professor Adrian K Dixon, Professor of Radiology, Addenbrooke's Hospital, Cambridge</p>	<p>Mr Tam Fry, Honorary Chairman, Child Growth Foundation, London</p>	<p>Dr Margaret Somerville, Director of Public Health, Teignbridge Primary Care Trust</p>
<p>Ms Norma Armston, Freelance Consumer Advocate, Bolton</p>	<p>Dr David Elliman, Consultant in Community Child Health, London</p>	<p>Dr Edmund Jessop, Medical Adviser, National Specialist Commissioning Advisory Group (NSCAG), Department of Health, London</p>	<p>Professor Lindsay Wilson Turnbull, Scientific Director, Centre for MR Investigations & YCR Professor of Radiology, University of Hull</p>
<p>Professor Max Bachmann Professor Health Care Interfaces, Department of Health Policy and Practice, University of East Anglia</p>	<p>Professor Glyn Elwyn, Primary Medical Care Research Group, Swansea Clinical School, University of Wales Swansea</p>	<p>Dr Jennifer J Kurinczuk, Consultant Clinical Epidemiologist, National Perinatal Epidemiology Unit, Oxford</p>	<p>Professor Martin J Whittle, Head of Division of Reproductive & Child Health, University of Birmingham</p>
<p>Professor Rudy Bilous Professor of Clinical Medicine & Consultant Physician, The Academic Centre, South Tees Hospitals NHS Trust</p>	<p>Dr John Fielding, Consultant Radiologist, Radiology Department, Royal Shrewsbury Hospital</p>	<p>Dr Susanne M Ludgate, Medical Director, Medical Devices Agency, London</p>	<p>Dr Dennis Wright, Consultant Biochemist & Clinical Director, Pathology & The Kennedy Galton Centre, Northwick Park & St Mark's Hospitals, Harrow</p>
<p>Dr Paul Cockcroft, Consultant Medical Microbiologist/Laboratory Director, Public Health Laboratory, St Mary's Hospital, Portsmouth</p>	<p>Dr Karen N Foster, Clinical Lecturer, Dept of General Practice & Primary Care, University of Aberdeen</p>	<p>Dr William Rosenberg, Senior Lecturer and Consultant in Medicine, University of Southampton</p>	
	<p>Professor Antony J Franks, Deputy Medical Director, The Leeds Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust</p>	<p>Dr Susan Schonfield, CPHM Specialised Services Commissioning, Croydon Primary Care Trust</p>	

Pharmaceuticals Panel

Members

<p>Chair, Dr John Reynolds, Clinical Director, Acute General Medicine SDU, Oxford Radcliffe Hospital</p>	<p>Dr Christopher Cates, GP and Cochrane Editor, Bushey Health Centre</p>	<p>Mrs Sharon Hart, Managing Editor, <i>Drug & Therapeutics Bulletin</i>, London</p>	<p>Professor Jan Scott, Professor of Psychological Treatments, Institute of Psychiatry, University of London</p>
<p>Professor Tony Avery, Professor of Primary Health Care, University of Nottingham</p>	<p>Professor Imti Choonara, Professor in Child Health, University of Nottingham, Derbyshire Children's Hospital</p>	<p>Dr Christine Hine, Consultant in Public Health Medicine, Bristol South & West Primary Care Trust</p>	<p>Mrs Katrina Simister, New Products Manager, National Prescribing Centre, Liverpool</p>
<p>Professor Stirling Bryan, Professor of Health Economics, Health Services Management Centre, University of Birmingham</p>	<p>Mr Charles Dobson, Special Projects Adviser, Department of Health</p>	<p>Professor Stan Kaye, Professor of Medical Oncology, Consultant in Medical Oncology/Drug Development, The Royal Marsden Hospital</p>	<p>Dr Richard Tiner, Medical Director, Association of the British Pharmaceutical Industry</p>
<p>Mr Peter Cardy, Chief Executive, Macmillan Cancer Relief, London</p>	<p>Dr Robin Ferner, Consultant Physician and Director, West Midlands Centre for Adverse Drug Reactions, City Hospital NHS Trust, Birmingham</p>	<p>Ms Barbara Meredith, Project Manager Clinical Guidelines, Patient Involvement Unit, NICE</p>	<p>Dr Helen Williams, Consultant Microbiologist, Norfolk & Norwich University Hospital NHS Trust</p>
	<p>Dr Karen A Fitzgerald, Pharmaceutical Adviser, Bro Taf Health Authority, Cardiff</p>	<p>Dr Frances Rotblat, CPMP Delegate, Medicines Control Agency, London</p>	

Therapeutic Procedures Panel

Members

Chair,

Professor Bruce Campbell,
Consultant Vascular and
General Surgeon, Royal Devon
& Exeter Hospital

Dr Mahmood Adil, Head of
Clinical Support & Health
Protection, Directorate of
Health and Social Care (North),
Department of Health,
Manchester

Dr Aileen Clarke,
Reader in Health Services
Research, Public Health &
Policy Research Unit,
Barts & the London School of
Medicine & Dentistry,
Institute of Community Health
Sciences, Queen Mary,
University of London

Mr Matthew William Cooke,
Senior Clinical Lecturer and
Honorary Consultant,
Emergency Department,
University of Warwick, Coventry
& Warwickshire NHS Trust,
Division of Health in the
Community, Centre for Primary
Health Care Studies, Coventry

Dr Carl E Counsell, Senior
Lecturer in Neurology,
University of Aberdeen

Dr Keith Dodd, Consultant
Paediatrician, Derbyshire
Children's Hospital

Professor Gene Feder, Professor
of Primary Care R&D, Barts &
the London, Queen Mary's
School of Medicine and
Dentistry, University of London

Professor Paul Gregg,
Professor of Orthopaedic
Surgical Science, Department of
Orthopaedic Surgery,
South Tees Hospital NHS Trust

Ms Bec Hanley, Freelance
Consumer Advocate,
Hurstpierpoint

Ms Maryann L. Hardy,
Lecturer,
Division of Radiography,
University of Bradford

Professor Alan Horwich,
Director of Clinical R&D, The
Institute of Cancer Research,
London

Dr Phillip Leech, Principal
Medical Officer for Primary
Care, Department of Health,
London

Dr Simon de Lusignan,
Senior Lecturer, Primary Care
Informatics, Department of
Community Health Sciences,
St George's Hospital Medical
School, London

Dr Mike McGovern, Senior
Medical Officer, Heart Team,
Department of Health, London

Professor James Neilson,
Professor of Obstetrics and
Gynaecology, Dept of Obstetrics
and Gynaecology,
University of Liverpool,
Liverpool Women's Hospital

Dr John C Pounsford,
Consultant Physician, North
Bristol NHS Trust

Dr Vimal Sharma,
Consultant Psychiatrist & Hon
Snr Lecturer,
Mental Health Resource Centre,
Victoria Central Hospital,
Wirrall

Dr L David Smith, Consultant
Cardiologist, Royal Devon &
Exeter Hospital

Professor Norman Waugh,
Professor of Public Health,
University of Aberdeen

Expert Advisory Network

Members

Professor Douglas Altman,
Director of CSM & Cancer
Research UK Med Stat Gp,
Centre for Statistics in
Medicine, University of Oxford,
Institute of Health Sciences,
Headington, Oxford

Professor John Bond,
Director, Centre for Health
Services Research,
University of Newcastle upon
Tyne, School of Population &
Health Sciences,
Newcastle upon Tyne

Mr Shaun Brogan,
Chief Executive, Ridgeway
Primary Care Group, Aylesbury

Mrs Stella Burnside OBE,
Chief Executive,
Office of the Chief Executive.
Trust Headquarters,
Altnagelvin Hospitals Health &
Social Services Trust,
Altnagelvin Area Hospital,
Londonderry

Ms Tracy Bury,
Project Manager, World
Confederation for Physical
Therapy, London

Mr John A Cairns,
Professor of Health Economics,
Health Economics Research
Unit, University of Aberdeen

Professor Iain T Cameron,
Professor of Obstetrics and
Gynaecology and Head of the
School of Medicine,
University of Southampton

Dr Christine Clark,
Medical Writer & Consultant
Pharmacist, Rossendale

Professor Collette Mary Clifford,
Professor of Nursing & Head of
Research, School of Health
Sciences, University of
Birmingham, Edgbaston,
Birmingham

Professor Barry Cookson,
Director,
Laboratory of Healthcare
Associated Infection,
Health Protection Agency,
London

Professor Howard Stephen Cuckle,
Professor of Reproductive
Epidemiology, Department of
Paediatrics, Obstetrics &
Gynaecology, University of
Leeds

Professor Nicky Cullum,
Director of Centre for Evidence
Based Nursing, University of York

Dr Katherine Darton,
Information Unit, MIND – The
Mental Health Charity, London

Professor Carol Dezateux,
Professor of Paediatric
Epidemiology, London

Mr John Dunning,
Consultant Cardiothoracic
Surgeon, Cardiothoracic
Surgical Unit, Papworth
Hospital NHS Trust, Cambridge

Mr Jonothan Earnshaw,
Consultant Vascular Surgeon,
Gloucestershire Royal Hospital,
Gloucester

Professor Martin Eccles,
Professor of Clinical
Effectiveness, Centre for Health
Services Research, University of
Newcastle upon Tyne

Professor Pam Enderby,
Professor of Community
Rehabilitation, Institute of
General Practice and Primary
Care, University of Sheffield

Mr Leonard R Fenwick,
Chief Executive, Newcastle
upon Tyne Hospitals NHS Trust

Professor David Field,
Professor of Neonatal Medicine,
Child Health, The Leicester
Royal Infirmary NHS Trust

Mrs Gillian Fletcher,
Antenatal Teacher & Tutor and
President, National Childbirth
Trust, Henfield

Professor Jayne Franklyn,
Professor of Medicine,
Department of Medicine,
University of Birmingham,
Queen Elizabeth Hospital,
Edgbaston, Birmingham

Ms Grace Gibbs,
Deputy Chief Executive,
Director for Nursing, Midwifery
& Clinical Support Servs,
West Middlesex University
Hospital, Isleworth

Dr Neville Goodman,
Consultant Anaesthetist,
Southmead Hospital, Bristol

Professor Alastair Gray,
Professor of Health Economics,
Department of Public Health,
University of Oxford

Professor Robert E Hawkins,
CRC Professor and Director of
Medical Oncology, Christie CRC
Research Centre, Christie
Hospital NHS Trust, Manchester

Professor F D Richard Hobbs,
Professor of Primary Care &
General Practice, Department of
Primary Care & General
Practice, University of
Birmingham

Professor Allen Hutchinson,
Director of Public Health &
Deputy Dean of SCHARR,
Department of Public Health,
University of Sheffield

Dr Duncan Keeley,
General Practitioner (Dr Burch
& Ptnrs), The Health Centre,
Thame

Dr Donna Lamping,
Research Degrees Programme
Director & Reader in Psychology,
Health Services Research Unit,
London School of Hygiene and
Tropical Medicine, London

Mr George Levy,
Chief Executive, Motor
Neurone Disease Association,
Northampton

Professor James Lindesay,
Professor of Psychiatry for the
Elderly, University of Leicester,
Leicester General Hospital

Professor Rajan Madhok,
Medical Director & Director of
Public Health, Directorate of
Clinical Strategy & Public
Health, North & East Yorkshire
& Northern Lincolnshire Health
Authority, York

Professor David Mant,
Professor of General Practice,
Department of Primary Care,
University of Oxford

Professor Alexander Markham,
Director, Molecular Medicine
Unit, St James's University
Hospital, Leeds

Dr Chris McCall,
General Practitioner,
The Hadleigh Practice,
Castle Mullen

Professor Alistair McGuire,
Professor of Health Economics,
London School of Economics

Dr Peter Moore,
Freelance Science Writer,
Ashtead

Dr Andrew Mortimore,
Consultant in Public Health
Medicine, Southampton City
Primary Care Trust

Dr Sue Moss,
Associate Director, Cancer
Screening Evaluation Unit,
Institute of Cancer Research,
Sutton

Professor Jon Nicholl,
Director of Medical Care
Research Unit, School of Health
and Related Research,
University of Sheffield

Mrs Julietta Patnick,
National Co-ordinator, NHS
Cancer Screening Programmes,
Sheffield

Professor Robert Peveler,
Professor of Liaison Psychiatry,
University Mental Health
Group, Royal South Hants
Hospital, Southampton

Professor Chris Price,
Visiting Chair – Oxford,
Clinical Research, Bayer
Diagnostics Europe,
Cirencester

Ms Marianne Rigge,
Director, College of Health,
London

Dr Eamonn Sheridan,
Consultant in Clinical Genetics,
Genetics Department,
St James's University Hospital,
Leeds

Dr Ken Stein,
Senior Clinical Lecturer in
Public Health, Director,
Peninsula Technology
Assessment Group,
University of Exeter

Professor Sarah Stewart-Brown,
Director HSRU/Honorary
Consultant in PH Medicine,
Department of Public Health,
University of Oxford

Professor Ala Szczepura,
Professor of Health Service
Research, Centre for Health
Services Studies, University of
Warwick

Dr Ross Taylor,
Senior Lecturer,
Department of General Practice
and Primary Care,
University of Aberdeen

Mrs Joan Webster,
Consumer member, HTA –
Expert Advisory Network

Feedback

The HTA Programme and the authors would like to know your views about this report.

The Correspondence Page on the HTA website (<http://www.nchta.org>) is a convenient way to publish your comments. If you prefer, you can send your comments to the address below, telling us whether you would like us to transfer them to the website.

We look forward to hearing from you.